Foreword to the Fourth Edition

We are pleased to have the opportunity in this Fourth Edition to correct typographical errors in the Third Edition as well as to bring the book in line with the recent revision of the ISO Pascal standard performed by Working Group 2 of ISO committee IEC JTC1/SC22 since the standard was formally approved in 1983. This revision of the ISO standard also resolved differences between it and the American (ANSI–X3/IEEE P770) standard.

The major changes affect the definition of UnsignedReal, textfiles, the procedure Read, and complying processors.

We should note that, as this edition goes to press, a new “Extended Pascal” standard is near final approval. Extended Pascal is intended to address many complaints about limitations in the “classic” Pascal language that this book describes.

Andy Mickel and Jim Miner
Minneapolis, USA
February, 1991

Foreword to the Third Edition

For nearly a decade Pascal User Manual and Report has served as the standard tutorial and reference book for practicing programmers who wanted to learn and use Pascal. During the 1970’s the popularity of Pascal grew beyond anyone’s expectations and has become one of the most important computer programming languages used throughout the world. At that time in the United States, commercial use of Pascal often exceeded academic interest. Today most universities use Pascal to teach programming. Pascal is the modern alternative to PL/1 or Algol 60, and even Fortran is changing to take advantage of Pascal’s innovations.

In our work with Pascal User’s Group and Pascal News, we witnessed the spread of Pascal implementations to every modern com–
puter system. In 1971 one computer system had a Pascal compiler. By 1974 the number had grown to 10 and in 1979 there were more than 80. Pascal is always available on those ubiquitous breeds of computer systems: personal computers and professional workstations.


We have chosen to modify the User Manual and the Report with respect to the Standard — not to make this book a substitute for the Standard. As a result this book retains much of its readability and elegance which, we believe, set it apart from the Standard. We updated the syntactic notation to Niklaus Wirth’s EBNF and improved the style of programs in the User Manual. For the convenience of readers familiar with previous editions of this book, we have included Appendix E which summarizes the changes necessitated by the Standard.

Finally, there ought to be a note in this book that Pascal was named after the French mathematician, humanist, and religious fanatic Blaise Pascal, who built a simple calculating machine. We wish to thank Roberto Minio and Niklaus Wirth for their support of the project to revise this book. Henry Ledgard offered us much timely and consistently useful advice. Elise Oranges conscientiously facilitated production schedules. We also thank William W. Porter for his artwork and Linda Strzegowski who did the typesetting for this edition.

Andy Mickel
Jim Miner
Minneapolis, USA
November, 1984
Preface

A preliminary version of the programming language Pascal was drafted in 1968. It followed in its spirit the Algol 60 and Algol W line of languages. After an extensive development phase, a first compiler became operational in 1970, and publication followed a year later [see References 1 and 8.] The growing interest in the development of compilers for other computers called for a consolidation of Pascal, and two years of experience in the use of the language dictated a few revisions. This led in 1973 to the publication of a Revised Report and a definition of a language representation in terms of the ISO character set.

This book consists of two parts: The User Manual, and the Revised Report. The User Manual is directed to those who have previously acquired some familiarity with computer programming, and who wish to get acquainted with the language Pascal. Hence, the style of the User Manual is that of a tutorial, and many examples are included to demonstrate the various features of Pascal. Summarizing tables and syntax specifications are added as Appendices. The Report is included in this book to serve as a concise, ultimate reference for both programmers and implementors. It describes Standard Pascal which constitutes a common base between various implementations of the language.

The linear structure of a book is by no means ideal for introducing a language. Nevertheless, in its use as a tutorial, we recommend following the given organization of the User Manual, paying careful
attention to the example programs, and then to reread those sections which cause difficulties. In particular, one may wish to reference Chapter 12, if questions arise concerning input and output conventions.

Chapter 0–12 of the User Manual, and the entire Report, describe Standard Pascal. Implementors should regard the task of recognizing ISO Standard Pascal as the basic requirement of their systems, whereas programmers who intend their programs to be transportable from one computer system to another should use only features described as Standard Pascal. Of course, individual implementations may provide additional facilities which, however, should be clearly labelled as extensions.

The efforts of many go into the User Manual, and we especially thank the members of the Institut fuer Informatik, ETH Zurich, and John Larmouth, Rudy Schild, Olivier Lecarme, and Pierre Desjardins for their criticism, suggestions, and encouragement. Our implementation of Pascal — which made this manual both possible and necessary — is the work of Urs Ammann, aided by Helmut Sandmayr.

Kathleen Jensen
Niklaus Wirth
ETH Zurich
Switzerland
November, 1974
Table of Contents

Forewords ........................................ v
Preface ........................................... vii
Table of Contents .................................. ix
List of Figures ..................................... xv

USER MANUAL (Pascal Tutorial)
by K. Jensen and N. Wirth

CHAPTER 0
Introduction ....................................... 1
0.A. An Overview of Pascal Programs ............. 1
0.B. Syntax Diagrams ............................... 3
0.C. EBNF ......................................... 3
0.D. Scope ......................................... 5
0.E. Miscellaneous .................................. 6

CHAPTER 1
Notation: Symbols and Separators ................. 9
1.A. Separators ..................................... 9
1.B. Special Symbols and Word Symbols .......... 9
1.C. Identifiers .................................... 10
1.D. Numbers ...................................... 12
1.E. Character Strings ............................. 12
1.F. Labels ........................................ 13
1.G. Directives .................................... 13

CHAPTER 2
The Concept of Data: Simple Data Types .......... 14
2.A. Ordinal Data Types ............................ 15
2.B. The Type Boolean ............................ 16
2.C. The Type Integer ............................. 17
2.D. The Type Char ................................ 18
2.E. The Type Real ................................ 19

ix
# Table of Contents

## CHAPTER 3
The Program Heading and the Declaration Part ............. 21
  3.A. Program Heading ........................................ 22
  3.B. Label Declaration Part .................................. 22
  3.C. Constant Definition Part ................................ 23
  3.D. Type Definition Part ................................... 24
  3.E. Variable Declaration Part ................................ 25
  3.F. Procedure and Function Declaration Part .............. 27
  3.G. Scope of Identifiers and Labels ....................... 27

## CHAPTER 4
The Concept of Action ........................................ 28
  4.A. The Assignment Statement and Expressions ............ 28
  4.B. The Procedure Statement ................................ 33
  4.C. The Compound Statement and the Empty Statement ..... 34
  4.D. Repetitive Statements .................................. 35
    4.D.1 The While Statement .................................. 35
    4.D.2 The Repeat Statement ................................ 35
    4.D.3 The For Statement ................................... 37
  4.E. Conditional Statements ................................. 43
    4.E.1 The If Statement ..................................... 43
    4.E.2 The Case Statement ................................. 46
  4.F. The With Statement .................................... 47
  4.G. The Goto Statement .................................... 47

## CHAPTER 5
Enumerated and Subrange Types .............................. 50
  5.A. Enumerated Types ...................................... 50
  5.B. Subrange Types ......................................... 53

## CHAPTER 6
Structured Types in General — Array Types in Particular 55
  6.A. The Array Type ......................................... 56
  6.B. String Types ......................................... 63
  6.C. Pack and Unpack ....................................... 64

## CHAPTER 7
Record Types .................................................. 65
7.A. Fixed Records .................................. 65
7.B. Variant Records ................................. 69
7.C. The With Statement ........................... 73

CHAPTER 8
Set Types ........................................... 76
8.A. Set Constructors ............................... 77
8.B. Set Operations ................................. 78
8.C. On Program Development ..................... 80

CHAPTER 9
File Types .......................................... 86
9.A. The File Structure ............................. 86
9.B. Textfiles ....................................... 92

CHAPTER 10
Pointer Types .................................... 94
10.A. Pointer Variables and Identified (Dynamic) Variables .. 94
10.B. New and Dispose .............................. 99

CHAPTER 11
Procedures and Functions ......................... 102
11.A. Procedures .................................. 103
  11.A.1 Parameter Lists ............................ 106
  11.A.2 Conformant–Array Parameters .......... 112
  11.A.3 Recursive Procedures .................... 113
  11.A.4 Procedural Parameters ................... 117
11.B. Functions ................................... 122
  11.B.1 Functional Parameters ................. 124
  11.B.2 Side Effects ............................ 125
11.C. Forward Declarations ....................... 126

CHAPTER 12
Textfile Input and Output ......................... 127
12.A. The Predeclared Files Input and Output .... 128
12.B. The Procedures Read and Readln .......... 133
12.C. The Procedures Write and Writeln ....... 135
12.D. The Procedure Page ......................... 140
REPORT (Pascal Reference) by N. Wirth

1. Introduction .................................. 142
2. Summary of the Language ........................ 143
3. Notation and Terminology ...................... 147
4. Symbols and Symbol Separators ................. 148
5. Constants .................................. 151
6. Types ..................................... 152
    6.1 Simple Types ............................ 153
        6.1.1 Enumerated Types .................. 154
        6.1.2 Predefined Simple Types .......... 154
        6.1.3 Subrange Types ................... 155
    6.2 Structured Types ........................ 155
        6.2.1 Array Types ....................... 156
        6.2.2 Record Types ..................... 156
        6.2.3 Set Types ........................ 158
        6.2.4 File Types ....................... 158
    6.3 Pointer Types ............................ 159
    6.4 Example of Type Definition Part ............. 159
    6.5 Type Compatibility ........................ 160
6. Variables ................................... 161
    7.1 Entire Variables .......................... 162
    7.2 Component Variables ........................ 162
        7.2.1 Indexed Variables .................. 162
        7.2.2 Field Designators .................. 163
    7.3 Identified Variables ....................... 163
    7.4 Buffer Variables ........................... 164
8. Expressions ................................ 165
    8.1 Operands ................................ 165
    8.2 Operators ................................ 167
        8.2.1. Arithmetic Operators ............. 167
        8.2.2. Boolean Operators ............... 168
        8.2.3. Set Operators .................... 168
        8.2.4. Relational Operators ............. 169
9. Statements .................................. 170
    9.1 Simple Statements ......................... 170
        9.1.1 Assignment Statements .............. 170
        9.1.2 Procedure Statements .............. 170
9.1.3 Goto Statements ........................................... 171
9.2 Structured Statements ........................................ 172
  9.2.1 Compound Statements ................................... 172
  9.2.2 Conditional Statements .................................. 172
  9.2.3 Repetitive Statements ................................... 173
  9.2.4 With Statements .......................................... 176
10. Blocks, Scope, and Activations ................................ 177
  10.1 Blocks ..................................................... 177
  10.2 Scope ...................................................... 178
  10.3 Activations ................................................ 179
11. Procedures and Functions ...................................... 181
  11.1 Procedure Declarations ................................... 181
  11.2 Function Declarations ..................................... 183
  11.3 Parameters ................................................ 184
    11.3.1 Formal Parameter Lists ............................... 185
    11.3.2 Actual Parameter Lists ............................... 187
    11.3.3 Parameter–List Congruity ............................. 188
    11.3.4 Conformability and Conformant Types ................ 189
  11.4 Predeclared Procedures ................................... 190
    11.4.1 File Handling Procedures ............................. 190
    11.4.2 Dynamic Allocation Procedures ....................... 191
    11.4.3 Data Transfer Procedures .............................. 192
  11.5 Predeclared Functions ..................................... 192
    11.5.1 Arithmetic Functions ................................ 192
    11.5.2 Boolean Functions .................................... 193
    11.5.3 Transfer Functions ................................... 193
    11.5.4 Ordinal Functions .................................... 193
12. Textfile Input and Output .................................... 194
  12.1 Read ....................................................... 194
    12.1.1 Char Read ............................................. 195
    12.1.2 Integer Read .......................................... 195
    12.1.3 Real Read .............................................. 195
  12.2 Readln ..................................................... 195
  12.3 Write ....................................................... 196
    12.3.1 Char Write ............................................. 197
    12.3.2 Integer Write .......................................... 197
    12.3.3 Real Write .............................................. 197
    12.3.4 Boolean Write .......................................... 198
12.3.5 String Write ............................... 198
12.4 Writeln ...................................... 198
12.5 Page ........................................ 199
13. Programs ....................................... 199
14. Compliance with ISO 7185 .................... 200

References ........................................... 202

APPENDIX A Predeclared Procedures and Functions ... 204

APPENDIX B Summary of Operators ..................... 208
Operator Precedence in Expressions ..................... 209
Other Operations ..................................... 209

APPENDIX C Tables .................................... 210
Table of Standard Identifiers .......................... 211
Table of Symbols ..................................... 212

APPENDIX D Syntax .................................... 213
Collected EBNF: Hierarchical ......................... 215
Cross Reference of EBNF Indexed To Report .......... 221
Collected EBNF: Alphabetical ......................... 225
Syntax Diagrams ..................................... 230

APPENDIX E Summary of Changes to Pascal User Manual
and Report Necessitated by the ISO 7185 Standard .... 240

APPENDIX F Programming Examples ................... 242

APPENDIX G ASCII Character Set ..................... 247

Index to Programs, Program Fragments, and
Program Schemata .................................. 249

Index ................................................... 254
List of Figures

0.a Syntax diagram for Program .................................. 4
0.b Syntax diagram for Block .................................. 4
0.c Block Structure ............................................. 5

1.a Syntax diagram for Letter ................................... 11
1.b Syntax diagram for Digit ................................... 11
1.c Syntax diagram for Identifier ............................... 11
1.d Syntax diagram for UnsignedInteger and DigitSequence ...... 12
1.e Syntax diagram for UnsignedNumber .......................... 12
1.f Syntax diagram for CharacterString .......................... 13
1.g Syntax diagram for Directive ................................ 13

2.a Type Taxonomy of Data Types ............................... 14
2.b Type Taxonomy of Simple Data Types ......................... 15
2.c Syntax diagram for SimpleType ............................... 15
2.d Syntax diagram for OrdinalType ................................ 16

3.a Syntax diagram for Program .................................. 21
3.b Syntax diagram for Block .................................. 21
3.c Syntax diagram for StatementPart ............................ 22
3.d Syntax diagram for ProgramHeading ......................... 22
3.e Syntax diagram for LabelDeclarationPart ..................... 22
3.f Syntax diagram for ConstantDefinitionPart .................. 23
3.g Syntax diagram for Constant ................................. 23
3.h Syntax diagram for TypeDefinitionPart ....................... 24
3.i Syntax diagram for Type .................................... 24
3.j Syntax diagram for VariableDeclarationPart .................. 25

4.a Syntax diagram for Statement ................................. 29
4.b Syntax diagram for AssignmentStatement ...................... 29
4.c Syntax diagram for Variable .................................. 30
4.d Syntax diagram for Factor .................................. 30
4.e Syntax diagram for UnsignedConstant ........................ 31
4.f Syntax diagram for Term ................................... 31
4.g Syntax diagram for SimpleExpression ........................ 31
4.h Syntax diagram for Expression ............................... 32
4.i Syntax diagram for CompoundStatement ....................... 34
4.j Syntax diagram for WhileStatement ............................ 35
4.k Syntax diagram for RepeatStatement .......................... 35
4.l Syntax diagram for ForStatement ............................. 38
4.m Syntax diagram for IfStatement ............................... 43
4.n Syntax diagram for CaseStatement ............................. 46
4.o Syntax diagram for GotoStatement ............................ 47
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.a</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>EnumeratedType</strong></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.b</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>SubrangeType</strong></td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.a</td>
<td>Type Taxonomy of Structured Data Types</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.b</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>StructuredType</strong></td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.c</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>ComponentVariable</strong></td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.d</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>ArrayType</strong></td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.a</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>RecordType</strong></td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.b</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>FieldList</strong></td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.c</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>FixedPart</strong></td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.d</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>RecordSection</strong></td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.e</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>VariantPart</strong></td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.f</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>Variant</strong></td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.g</td>
<td>Two Sample People</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.h</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>WithStatement</strong></td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.a</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>SetType</strong></td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.b</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>SetConstructor</strong></td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.a</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>FileType</strong></td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.b</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>BufferVariable</strong></td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.a</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>PointerType</strong></td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.b</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>IdentifiedVariable</strong></td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.c</td>
<td>Linked List</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.d</td>
<td>Linked List Before Insertion</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.e</td>
<td>Linked List After Insertion</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.a</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart</strong></td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.b</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>ProcedureOrFunctionHeading</strong></td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.c</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>ProcedureHeading</strong></td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.d</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>ProcedureStatement</strong></td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.e</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>FormalParameterList</strong></td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.f</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>ActualParameterList</strong></td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.g</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>ConformantArraySchema</strong></td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.h</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>IndexTypeSpecification</strong></td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.i</td>
<td>Binary Tree Structure</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.j</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>FunctionHeading</strong></td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.a</td>
<td>Syntax diagram for <strong>WriteParameterList</strong></td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.b</td>
<td>Formatted Write Examples</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.a</td>
<td>Complete Type Taxonomy of Data Types</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.a</td>
<td>Collected Syntax Diagrams</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
USER MANUAL
CHAPTER 0

Introduction

0.A. An Overview of Pascal Programs

Much of the following text assumes that you, the reader, have a minimal grasp of computer terminology and a “feeling” for the structure of a program. The purpose of this section is to spark your intuition.

An algorithm or computer program consists of two essential parts, a description of actions that are to be performed, and a description of the data, that are manipulated by these actions. Actions are described by so-called statements, and data are described by so-called declarations and definitions.

The program is divided into a heading and a body, called a block. The heading gives the program a name and lists its parameters. These are (file) variables and represent the arguments and results of the computation. The block consists of six sections, where any except the last may be empty. They must appear in the order given in the definition for a block:

\[
Block = \text{LabelDeclarationPart} \\
\text{ConstantDefinitionPart} \\
\text{TypeDefintionPart} \\
\text{VariableDeclarationPart} \\
\text{ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart} \\
\text{StatementPart}.
\]
An Example Program

program Inflation(Output);

{ Assuming annual inflation rates of 7%, 8%, and 10%,
find the factor by which any unit of currency such as
the franc, dollar, pound sterling, mark, ruble, yen,
guilder will have been devalued in 1, 2,...,n years.}

const
    MaxYears = 10;
var
    Year: 0..MaxYears;
    Factor1, Factor2, Factor3: Real;
begin
    Year := 0;
    Factor1 := 1.0; Factor2 := 1.0; Factor3 := 1.0;
    Writeln(‘ Year  7%  8%  10’); Writeln;
    repeat
        Year := Year + 1;
        Factor1 := Factor1 * 1.07;
        Factor2 := Factor2 * 1.08;
        Factor3 := Factor3 * 1.10;
        Writeln(Year: 5, Factor1: 7:3, Factor2: 7:3
            Factor3 :7:3)
    until Year = MaxYears
end .

Yields as results:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>7%</th>
<th>8%</th>
<th>10%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.070</td>
<td>1.080</td>
<td>1.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.145</td>
<td>1.166</td>
<td>1.210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.225</td>
<td>1.260</td>
<td>1.331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.311</td>
<td>1.360</td>
<td>1.464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.403</td>
<td>1.469</td>
<td>1.611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1.501</td>
<td>1.587</td>
<td>1.772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1.606</td>
<td>1.714</td>
<td>1.949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1.718</td>
<td>1.851</td>
<td>2.144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.838</td>
<td>1.999</td>
<td>2.358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.967</td>
<td>2.159</td>
<td>2.594</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The first section lists all labels defined in this block. The second section defines synonyms for constants; i.e., it introduces “constant identifiers” that may later be used in place of those constants. The third contains type definitions; and the fourth, variable definitions. The fifth section defines subordinate program parts (i.e., procedures and functions). The statement part specifies the actions to be taken.

0.B. Syntax Diagrams

The previous program outline is more graphically expressed in a syntax diagram. Starting at the diagram for Program (Figure 0.a), a path through the diagram defines a syntactically correct program. Each rectangular box references a diagram by that name, which is then used to define its meaning. Terminal symbols (those actually written in a Pascal program) are in rounded enclosures. (See Appendix D for the complete set of diagrams for Pascal.)

0.C. EBNF

An alternative method for describing syntax is the Extended Backus–Naur Form, (EBNF), where syntactic constructs are denoted by English words and literals. These words are suggestive of the nature or meaning of the construct while the literals denote actual symbols used in writing the language. Literals are enclosed in quotation marks.

Enclosure of a sequence of constructs and literals by the metasymbols { and } implies its occurrence zero or more times. Alternatives are separated by the metasymbol |. Parentheses ( and ) are used for grouping and the metasymbols [ and ] denote that the enclosed constructs and literals are optional. (A complete explanation of EBNF and the EBNF of Pascal is given in Appendix D.) As an example, the construct Program of Figure 0.a is defined by the following EBNF formulas called productions.

\[
\text{Program} = \text{ProgramHeading} \, ";" \, \text{Block} \, ".".
\]

\[
\text{ProgramHeading} = \text{"program" \, Identifier \, [\text{"("} \text{IdentifierList} \text{"\,")"}].}
\]

\[
\text{IdentifierList} = \text{Identifier} \, \{\text{","} \, \text{Identifier}\}.
\]
Figure 0.a  Syntax diagram for Program

Figure 0.b  Syntax Diagram for Block
0.D. Scope

Each procedure and function declaration has a structure similar to a program; i.e., each consists of a heading and a block. Hence, procedure and function declarations may be nested within other procedures or functions. Labels, constant synonyms, type, variable, procedure, and function declarations are local to the procedure or function in which they are declared. That is, their identifiers have significance only within the program text that constitutes the block. This region of program text is called the scope of these identifiers. Since blocks may be nested, so may scopes. Objects that are declared in the main program, i.e., not local to some procedure or function, are called global and have significance throughout the entire program.

Since blocks may be nested within other blocks by procedure and function declarations, one is able to assign a level of nesting to each. If the outermost program–defined block (e.g., the main program) is called level 0, then a block defined within this block would be of level 1; in general, a block defined in level 1 would be of level (i+1). Figure 0.3 illustrates a block structure.

![Figure 0.3 Block structure](image-url)
This block structure could represent the following program skeleton:

```pascal
program M;
    procedure P;
        procedure A;
            procedure B;
                begin
                end { B };
                begin
                end { A };
                begin
                end { P };
        procedure Q;
            procedure R;
                begin
                end { R };
            procedure S;
                begin
                end { S };
                begin
                end { Q };
                begin
                end { M }.
```

In terms of this formulation the scope or range of validity of an identifier `x` is the entire block in which `x` is defined, including those blocks defined in the same block as `x`. (For this example, note that all identifiers must be distinct. Section 3.G discusses the case where identifiers are not necessarily distinct.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>block</th>
<th>may access objects in blocks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>P, M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>A, P, M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>B, A, P, M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Q, M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>R, Q, M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>S, Q, M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**0.E. Miscellaneous**

For programmers acquainted with Algol, PL/I, or Fortran, it may prove helpful to glance at Pascal in terms of these other languages. For this
purpose, we list the following characteristics of Pascal:

1. Declaration of variables is mandatory.

2. Certain key words (e.g., `begin`, `end`, `repeat`) are "reserved" and cannot be used as identifiers.

3. The semicolon (`;`) is considered as a statement separator.

4. The standard data types are those of whole and real numbers, the logical values, and the (printable) characters. The basic data structuring facilities include the array, the record (corresponding to Cobol’s and PL/I’s “structure”), the set, and the (sequential) file. These structures can be combined and nested to form arrays of sets, files of records, etc. Data may be allocated dynamically and accessed via pointers. These pointers allow the full generality of list processing. There is a facility to declare new, basic data types with symbolic constants.

5. The set data structure offers facilities similar to the PL/I “bit string”.

6. Arrays may be of arbitrary dimension with arbitrary bounds; the array bounds are constant (i.e., there are no dynamic arrays.)

7. As in Fortran, Algol, and PL/I, there is a goto statement. Labels are unsigned integers and must be declared.

8. The compound statement is that of Algol, and corresponds to the DO group in PL/I.

9. The facilities of the Algol switch and the computed goto of Fortran are represented by the case statement.

10. The for statement, corresponding to the DO loop of Fortran, may only have steps of `1` to `1` or `-1` to `-1` and is executed only as long as the value of the control variable lies within the limits. Consequently, the controlled statement might not be executed at all.

11. There are no conditional expressions and no multiple assignments.
12. Procedures and functions may be called recursively.

13. There is no “own” attribute for variables (as in Algol).

14. Parameters are passed either by value or by reference; there is no “call by name.”

15. The “block structure” differs from that of Algol and PL/I insofar as there are no anonymous blocks; i.e., each block is given a name and thereby is made into a procedure or function.

16. All objects — constants, variables, etc. — must be declared before they are referenced. The following two exceptions are however allowed:
   a. the type identifier in a pointer type definition (Chapter 10)
   b. procedure and function identifiers when there is a forward declaration (Section 11.C).

17. The conformant–array parameter offers facilities similar to the Fortran “adjustable dimension” array argument.

Upon first contact with Pascal, some programmers tend to bemoan the absence of certain “favorite features.” Examples include an exponentiation operator, concatenation of strings, dynamic arrays, arithmetic operations on Boolean values, automatic type conversions, and default declarations. These were not oversights, but deliberate omissions. In some cases their presence would be primarily an invitation to inefficient programming solutions; in others, it was felt that they would be contrary to the aim of clarity and reliability and “good programming style.” Finally, a rigorous selection among the immense variety of programming facilities available had to be made in order to keep Pascal compilers relatively compact and efficient — efficient and economical for both the user who writes only small programs using a few constructions of the language and the user who writes large programs and tends to make use of the full language.
CHAPTER 1

Notation: Symbols and Separators

Pascal programs are represented by symbols and symbol separators. Pascal symbols include special symbols, word symbols, identifiers, numbers, character strings, labels, and directives. Symbol separators are explained in the next section.

1.A. Separators

Blanks, ends–of–lines (line separators), and comments are considered as symbol separators. No part of a separator can occur within a Pascal symbol. You must use at least one separator between two consecutive identifiers, word–symbols, or numbers.

A comment begins with either \{ or \* (not inside a character string) and ends with either a \} or \*). A comment may contain any sequence of end–of–lines and characters except \} or \*). A comment may be replaced with a space in the program text without altering its meaning.

Often you can improve the readability of a Pascal program by inserting blanks, end–of–lines (blank lines), and comments in it.

1.B. Special Symbols and Word Symbols

Here are the lists of special symbols and word symbols used to write Pascal programs. Note that two–character special symbols are written without any intervening separators.
Here are the special symbols:

+ - * /  
. , : ;  
= <> < <= > >=  
:= .. ↑  
( ) [ ]

Alternative special symbols:

( . for [  
.) @ or ^ for ]  

*Word symbols* (or reserved words) are normally underlined in the hand-written program to emphasize their interpretation as single symbols with fixed meaning. You may not use these words in a context other than that explicit in the definition of Pascal: in particular, these words may not be used as identifiers. They are written as a sequence of upper-case or lower-case letters (without surrounding escape characters). Here are the word-symbols:

and end nil set  
array file not then  
begin for of to  
case function or type  
const goto packed until  
div if procedure var  
do in program while  
downto label record with  
else mod repeat

1.C. Identifiers

*Identifiers* are names denoting constants, types, bounds, variables, procedures, and functions. They must begin with a letter, which may be followed by any combination and number of letters and digits. The spelling of an identifier is significant over its whole length. Corresponding upper-case and lower-case letters are considered equivalent.
Examples of identifiers:

PhoneList  Root3  Pi  h4g  X
ThisIsAVeryLongButNeverTheLessValidIdentifier
ThisIsAVeryLongButDifferentIdentifierThanTheOneAbove

LettersAndDigits and lettersanddigits denote the same identifier.

These are not identifiers:

3rd  array  level.4  Root-3  Tenth Planet

Certain identifiers, called predeclared identifiers, are provided automatically (e.g., sin, cos). In contrast to the word–symbols (e.g., array), we are not restricted to their definitions and may elect to redefine any predeclared identifiers, as they are assumed to be declared in a hypothetical block surrounding the entire program block. See Appendix C for tables listing all the predeclared identifiers in Pascal.
1.D. Numbers

Decimal notation is used for numbers, which denote either integer or real values. Any number can be preceded by a sign (+ or −); unsigned numbers cannot be signed. No comma may appear in a number. Real numbers are written with a decimal or scale factor or both. The letter $E$ (or $e$) preceding the scale factor is pronounced as “times 10 to the power.” Note that if a real number contains a decimal point, at least one digit must precede and follow the point.

![Figure 1.d Syntax diagram for UnsignedInteger; DigitSequence](image)

**Figure 1.d** Syntax diagram for *UnsignedInteger; DigitSequence*

![Figure 1.e Syntax diagram for UnsignedNumber](image)

**Figure 1.e** Syntax diagram for *UnsignedNumber*

*Examples of unsigned numbers.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3</th>
<th>03</th>
<th>6272844</th>
<th>0.6</th>
<th>5E-8</th>
<th>49.22E+08</th>
<th>1E10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*Incorrectly written numbers:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3,487,159</th>
<th>XII</th>
<th>.6</th>
<th>E10</th>
<th>5.E-16</th>
<th>five</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.487.159</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.E. Character Strings

Sequences of characters enclosed by apostrophes (single quote marks) are called *strings*. To include an apostrophe in a string, write the apostrophe twice.
Examples of strings:

'a' ';' '3' 'begin' 'don’t'

' ' This string has 33 characters.'

1.F. Labels
Labels are unsigned integers used to mark a Pascal statement. Their apparent value must be in the range 0 to 9999.

Examples of labels:

13  00100  9999

1.G. Directives
Directives are names that substitute for procedure and function blocks. Directives have the same syntax as identifiers. (See Chapter 11.)
The Concept of Data: Simple Data Types

Data is the general term describing all that is operated on by a computer. At the hardware and machine-code levels, all data are represented as sequences of binary digits (bits). Higher-level languages allow the use of abstractions that ignore the details of representation — by developing the data type concept.

A data type defines the set of values a variable may assume and the operations which may be applied to it. Every variable occurring in a program is associated with one and only one type. Although data types in Pascal can be quite sophisticated, each must be ultimately built from unstructured, simple types.

Pascal also provides facilities for creating collections of data types in the form of structured types and pointer types. These types are described in Chapters 6 through 10.

Figure 2.1a  Type taxonomy of data types
The two kinds of simple types in Pascal are ordinal types and the real type. An ordinal type is either defined by you (called an enumerated or subrange type) or is denoted by one of the three predefined ordinal type identifiers—Boolean, Integer, or Char. The real type is denoted by the predefined type identifier Real.

Figure 2.b  Type taxonomy of simple data types

Figure 2.c  Syntax diagram for SimpleType

An enumerated type is characterized by the set of its distinct values, upon which a linear ordering is defined. The values are denoted by identifiers in the definition of the type. A subrange type specifies a minimum and maximum value from a previously declared ordinal type to create a new ordinal type. Enumerated and subrange types are described in Chapter 5.

2.A. Ordinal Data Types

An ordinal data type describes a finite and ordered set of values. These values are mapped onto ordinal numbers 0, 1, 2, ..., except for the ordinal numbers of integers which are mapped onto themselves. Each ordinal type has a minimum and maximum value. Except for the minimum value, each value of an ordinal type has a predecessor value. Except for the maximum value, each value of an ordinal type has a successor value.
The predeclared functions `succ`, `pred`, and `ord` accept arguments of any ordinal type:

- `succ(X)` the successor of `x`; yields the next ordinal value
- `pred(X)` the predecessor of `x`; yields the previous ordinal value
- `ord(X)` the ordinal–number function; yields the ordinal number of `x`.

The relational operators `=`, `<>`, `<`, `<=`, `>=`, and `>` are applicable to all ordinal types provided both operands are of the same type. The order is determined by the values of the ordinal numbers underlying the operands.

### 2.B The Type Boolean

A Boolean value is one of the logical truth values denoted by the predefined identifiers `false` and `true`.

These logical operators yield a Boolean value when applied to Boolean operands: (Appendix B summarizes all operators.)

- `and` logical conjunction
- `or` logical disjunction
- `not` logical negation

Each of the relational operators `=`, `<>`, `<`, `<=`, `>=`, `in` yields a Boolean result. "<>" denotes inequality. Furthermore, the type `Boolean` is defined such that `false < true`. Hence, it is possible to define each of the 16 Boolean operations using the above logical and relational operators. For example, if `P` and `Q` are Boolean values, one can express
implication as \( P \leq Q \)
equivalence as \( P = Q \)
exclusive or as \( P \leftrightarrow Q \)

Predeclared Boolean functions — i.e., predeclared functions which yield a Boolean result — are:

- `odd(I)` true if the integer \( I \) is odd, false otherwise.
- `eoln(F)` end of a line, explained in Chapter 9.
- `eof(F)` end of file, explained in Chapter 9.

(Appendix A summarizes all predeclared functions.)

2.C. The Type Integer

A value of type `Integer` is an element of an implementation-defined subset of whole numbers. The following arithmetic operators yield an integer value when applied to integer operands:

- `*` multiply
- `div` divide and truncate (i.e., value is not rounded)
- `mod` modulus: let \( \text{Remainder} = A - (A \div B) \times B \);
  if \( \text{Remainder} < 0 \) then \( A \mod B = \text{Remainder} + B \)
  otherwise \( A \mod B = \text{Remainder} \)
- `+` add
- `-` subtract

An implementation-defined, predefined constant identifier `MaxInt` specifies the largest integer value allowable for all integer operations. If \( A \) and \( B \) are integer expressions, then the operation:

\[ A \text{ op } B \]

is guaranteed to be correctly implemented when:

\[ \text{abs}(A \text{ op } B) \leq \text{MaxInt}, \]
\[ \text{abs}(A) \leq \text{MaxInt}, \text{ and} \]
\[ \text{abs}(B) \leq \text{MaxInt} \]
Four predeclared functions yielding integer results are:

\begin{align*}
\text{abs}(I) & \quad \text{the absolute value of the integer value } I. \\
\text{sqr}(I) & \quad \text{the integer value } I \text{ squared, assuming } I \leq \text{MaxInt} \text{ div } I. \\
\text{trunc}(R) & \quad R \text{ is a real value: the result is its whole part. (The fractional part is discarded. Hence } \text{trunc}(3.7) = 3 \text{ and trunc}(-3.7) = -3). \\
\text{round}(R) & \quad R \text{ is a real value: the result is the rounded integer. } \\
& \quad \text{round}(R) \text{ for } R \geq 0 \text{ means } \text{trunc}(R + 0.5) \text{ and for } R < 0 \text{ means } \text{trunc}(R - 0.5). \\
\end{align*}

If \( I \) is an integer value, then

\begin{align*}
\text{succ}(I) & \quad \text{yields the "next" integer } (I + 1), \text{ and} \\
\text{pred}(I) & \quad \text{yields the preceding integer } (I - 1). \\
\end{align*}

2.D. The Type Char

A value of type \texttt{Char} is an element of a finite and ordered set of characters. Every computer system defines such a set for the purpose of communication. These characters are then available on the input and output equipment. Unfortunately, one standard character set does not exist; therefore, the elements and their ordering is strictly implementation-defined. (See Appendix G.)

A character enclosed in apostrophes (single quotes) denotes a value of this type. (To represent an apostrophe, write it twice.) However, it is possible that some character values have no constant representation.

\textit{Examples:}

'\*, 'G', '3', '!', 'X'

The following minimal assumptions hold for the type \texttt{Char}, independent of the underlying implementation:

1. The decimal digits '0' through '9' are numerically ordered and consecutive (e.g., \( \text{succ}('5') = '6' \)).
2. Upper-case letters 'A' through 'Z' may exist; if so, they are alphabetically ordered, but not necessarily consecutive (e.g., 'A' < 'B').

3. Lower-case letters 'a' through 'z' may exist; if so, they are alphabetically ordered, but not necessarily consecutive (e.g., 'a' < 'b').

The predeclared functions `ord` and `chr` allow the mapping of the character set onto the ordinal numbers of the character set — and vice versa; `ord` and `chr` are called transfer functions.

```plaintext
ord(C) is the ordinal number of the character C in the underlying ordered character set.

chr(I) is the character value with the ordinal number I.
```

You can see immediately that `ord` and `chr` are inverse functions, i.e.,

```plaintext
chr(ord(C)) = C and ord(chr(I)) = I
```

Furthermore, the ordering of a given character set is defined by

```plaintext
C1 < C2 if and only if ord(C1) < ord(C2)
```

This definition can be extended to each of the relational operators: =, !>, <, <=, >=, >. If `R` denotes one of these operators, then

```plaintext
C1 R C2 if and only if ord(C1) R ord(C2)
```

When the argument of the predeclared functions `pred` and `succ` is of type `Char`, the functions can be defined as:

```plaintext
pred(C) = chr(ord(C) - 1)
succ(C) = chr(ord(C) + 1)
```

*Note:* The predecessor (successor) of a character is dependent upon the underlying character set. The two properties hold only if the predecessor or successor exists.

2.E. The Type Real

A value of type `Real` is an element of the implementation-defined subset of real numbers.
All operations on values of type `Real` are approximations, the accuracy of which is defined by the implementation (machine) that you are using. `Real` is the only simple type that is not an ordinal type. Real values have no ordinal numbers, and for any real value there is no successor or predecessor value.

As long as at least one of the operands is of type `Real` (the other possibly being of type `Integer`) the following operators yield a real value:

- `*` multiply
- `/` divide (both operands may be integers, but the result is always real)
- `+` add
- `–` subtract

These predeclared functions accept a real argument and yield a real result:

- `abs(R)` absolute value of `R`
- `sqr(R)` `R` squared, if the resulting value doesn’t exceed the range of real numbers

These predeclared functions accept a real or integer argument and yield a real result:

- `sin(X)` sine of `X`, `X` in radians
- `cos(X)` cosine of `X`, `X` in radians
- `arctan(X)` arc tangent in radians of `X`
- `ln(X)` natural logarithm (to the base e) of `X`, `X > 0`
- `exp(X)` exponential function (e raised to the `X`)
- `sqrt(X)` square root of `X`, `X >= 0`.

**Warning:** Although real is included as a simple type, it cannot always be used in the same context as the other simple types (i.e., ordinal types). In particular, the functions `pred` and `succ` cannot take real arguments; and values of type `Real` cannot be used when indexing arrays, nor in controlling for statements, nor for defining the base type of a set. Furthermore reals cannot be used in a subrange type nor to index a case statement.
CHAPTER 3

The Program Heading and the Declaration Part

Every program consists of a heading and a block. The block contains a declaration part, in which all objects local to the program are defined, and a statement part, which specifies the actions to be executed upon these objects.

Figure 3.a  Syntax diagram for Program

Figure 3.b  Syntax diagram for Block
3.A. Program Heading

The heading gives the program a name (not otherwise significant inside the program) and lists its parameters that denote entities that exist outside the program and through which the program communicates with the environment. The entities (usually files—see Chapter 9) are called external. Each parameter must be declared in the block constituting the program, just as an ordinary local variable (see Section E.).

3.B. Label Declaration Part

Any statement in a program may be marked by prefixing the statement with a label followed by a colon (making possible a reference by a goto statement). However, the label must be declared in the label declaration part before its use. The symbol label heads this part, which has the general form:

A label is defined to be an unsigned integer, with a value in the range 0 to 9999.
Example:

label 13, 00100, 99;

3.C. Constant Definition Part

A constant definition introduces an identifier as a synonym for a constant. The symbol `const` heads the constant definition part, which has the general form:

```
+------------------+
| const            |
+------------------+
        |           |
        +-----------+
        | Identifier |
        +-----------+
            |   =   |
            +-------+
                |       |
                +-------+
            |   Constant |
            +---------+
                    |
                    | ;
                    |
```

**Figure 3.f** Syntax diagram for ConstantDefinitionPart

where a constant is either a number, a constant identifier (possibly signed), a character, or a string.

```
+---------------------------+
| +                        |
+---------------------------+
          |                   |
          +------------------+
          | ConstantIdentifier|
+------------------+
        |           |
        +-----------+
        | -         |
        +-----------+
            |       |
            +-------+
                |       |
                +-------+
            |   UnsignedNumber |
            +---------------+
                    |
                    | CharacterString |
                    +-----------------
```

**Figure 3.g** Syntax diagram for Constant

The use of constant identifiers generally makes a program more readable and acts as a convenient documentation aid. It also allows you to group machine- or example-dependent quantities at the beginning of the program where they can be easily noted and changed or both. This improves the portability and modularity of the program.
Example:

```pascal
const
  Avogadro = 6.023E23;
  PageLength = 60;
  Border = ' # * ';
  MyMove = True;
```

3.D. Type Definition Part

A data type in Pascal may be either directly described in a variable declaration (see below) or referenced by a type identifier. There are some places in Pascal where a type may be represented only by a type identifier. Pascal provides not only several standard type identifiers, but also a mechanism, the type definition, for introducing a new type identifier to represent a type. The symbol `type` heads a program part containing type definitions. The general form is:

![Syntax diagram for TypeDefinitionPart](image)

**Figure 3.h** Syntax diagram for `TypeDefinitionPart`

Note that `Type` represents a simple type, structured type, or pointer-type, and consists of either a type-identifier denoting an existing type or else a new type description.

![Syntax diagram for Type](image)

**Figure 3.i** Syntax diagram for `Type`

Examples of type definitions are found throughout the remainder of the User Manual.
3.E. Variable Declaration Part

Every variable identifier occurring in a program must be introduced in a *variable declaration*. This declaration must textually precede any use of the variable, unless the variable is a program parameter.

A variable declaration introduces a variable identifier and its associated data type by simply listing the identifier followed by the type. The symbol `var` heads the variable declaration part. The general form is:

![Syntax diagram for VariableDeclarationPart](image)

**Figure 3.j** Syntax diagram for VariableDeclarationPart

*Example:*

```pascal
var Root1, Root2, Root3: Real;
    Count, I: Integer;
    Found: Boolean;
    Filler: Char;
```

Any identifier (denoting an external entity — usually a file) listed in the program heading parameter list except *Input* or *Output* must be declared in the program's variable declaration part. *Input* or *Output*, if listed, are automatically declared to be textfiles (see Chapter 9).

```pascal
program TemperatureConversion(Output);

{ Program 3.1 - Example program illustrating constant and type definition and variable declaration parts. }

const
    Bias = 32;  Factor = 1.8;  Low = -20;  High = 39;
    Separator = ' ---';  Blanks = '   ';

type
    CelciusRange = Low..High

{ a subrange type—see Chapter 5 };```
var
  Degree: CelsiusRange;
begin
  for Degree := Low to High do
  begin
    Write(Output, Degree, 'C', Separator);
    Write(Output, Round(Degree*Factor + Bias), 'F');
    if odd(Degree) then Writeln(Output)
    else Write(Output, Blanks)
  end;
  Writeln(Output)
end.

Produces as results:

  -20 C --- -4 F   -19 C --- -2 F
  -18 C --- 0 F   -17 C --- 1 F
  -16 C --- 3 F   -15 C --- 5 F
  -14 C --- 7 F   -13 C --- 9 F
  -12 C --- 10 F  -11 C --- 12 F
  -10 C --- 14 F  -9 C --- 16 F
  -8 C --- 18 F  -7 C --- 19 F
  -6 C --- 21 F  -5 C --- 23 F
  -4 C --- 25 F  -3 C --- 27 F
  -2 C --- 28 F  -1 C --- 30 F
   0 C --- 32 F   1 C --- 34 F
   2 C --- 36 F   3 C --- 37 F
   4 C --- 39 F   5 C --- 41 F
   6 C --- 43 F   7 C --- 45 F
   8 C --- 46 F   9 C --- 48 F
  10 C --- 50 F  11 C --- 52 F
  12 C --- 54 F  13 C --- 55 F
  14 C --- 57 F  15 C --- 59 F
  16 C --- 61 F  17 C --- 63 F
  18 C --- 64 F  19 C --- 66 F
  20 C --- 68 F  21 C --- 70 F
  22 C --- 72 F  23 C --- 73 F
  24 C --- 75 F  25 C --- 77 F
  26 C --- 79 F  27 C --- 81 F
  28 C --- 82 F  29 C --- 84 F
  30 C --- 86 F  31 C --- 88 F
  32 C --- 90 F  33 C --- 91 F
  34 C --- 93 F  35 C --- 95 F
  36 C --- 97 F  37 C --- 99 F
  38 C --- 100 F 39 C --- 102 F
3.F. Procedure and Function Declaration Part

Every procedure or function identifier must be declared before its use.Procedure and function declarations take the same form as a program — a heading followed by a block — see Chapter 11 for details and examples. Procedures are subprograms that are activated by procedure statements. Functions are subprograms that yield a result value, and are used as constituents of expressions.

3.G. Scope of Identifiers and Labels

The declaration or definition of an identifier (constant, type, variable, procedure, or function identifier) or label holds for the entire block containing the definition or declaration, except for any nested (subordinate) block in which the identifier or label is redeclared or redefined. The region over which the declaration or definition of an identifier or label applies is called the scope of that identifier or label.

An identifier or label declared or defined in the program block is said to be global. An identifier or label is said to be local to the block where it is declared or defined. An identifier or label is non-local to a block if it is declared or defined in an enclosing block. See Section 0.D for examples.

You cannot declare a single identifier more than once within the same level and scope. Hence the following is incorrect:

*Example of incorrect variable declaration part:*

```plaintext
var  X: Integer;
    X: Char;
```
Essential to a computer program is action. That is, a program must do something with its data — even if that action is the choice of doing nothing! *Statements* describe these actions. Statements are either *simple* (e.g., the assignment statement) or *structured*. See the syntax diagram for *Statement* (Figure 4.a).

### 4.A. The Assignment Statement and Expressions

The most fundamental of statements is the *assignment statement*. It specifies that a newly computed value, specified by an expression, be assigned to a variable. Assignment statements have the form shown in Figure 4.b. The := symbol denotes *assignment* and is not to be confused with the relational operator =. The statement “\( A := 5 \)” is read “the current value of \( A \) is replaced with the value 5,” or simply, “\( A \) becomes 5.”

A *variable* (see Figure 4.c) may be an *entire variable* representing all the data storage for a simple, structured, or pointer type. In the case of structured types (see Chapters 6 through 9), a variable may be a *component variable* or a *buffer variable* representing one component of the data storage. For pointer types, a variable may be an *identified variable* representing data storage indirectly referenced by a pointer.

An *expression* consists of operators and operands. An operand may be a constant, variable, array-parameter bound (discussed in Chapter
11), or function designator. (A function designator specifies activation of a function. Predeclared functions are listed in Appendix A; user-declared functions are explained in Chapter 11.)

![Figure 4.a](image-url) Syntax diagram for Statement

![Figure 4.b](image-url) Syntax diagram for AssignmentStatement
An expression is a rule for calculating a value based on the conventional rules of algebra for left-to-right evaluation of operators and operator precedence. Expressions are composed of factors, terms, and simple expressions.

Factors are evaluated first and consist of individual constants or variables or function designators or array-parameter bounds or set constructors (see Chapter 8). A factor may also consist of the operator not applied to another factor representing a Boolean value. A factor may also comprise an expression enclosed within parentheses which is evaluated independently of preceding and following operators.
Terms are evaluated next and consist of a sequence of factors, separated by multiplying operators (*, /, div, mod, and) or alternatively, simply a factor by itself.

![Figure 4.e Syntax diagram for UnsignedConstant](image)

Simple expressions are evaluated after terms and consist of a sequence of terms, separated by adding operators (+, -, or) or alternatively, simply a term by itself. An optional sign-inversion operator (+, -) may prefix the first term of a simple expression.

![Figure 4.f Syntax diagram for Term](image)

Finally expressions are evaluated. These comprise a simple expression, a relational operator (=, <>, <=, >=, >, in) and another simple expression, or simply a simple expression itself.

![Figure 4.g Syntax diagram for SimpleExpression](image)
Examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
2 \times 3 - 4 \times 5 &= (2 \times 3) - (4 \times 5) = -14 \\
15 \div 4 \times 4 &= (15 \div 4) \times 4 = 12 \\
80/5/3 &= (80/5)/3 = 5.333 \\
4/2 \times 3 &= (4/2) \times 3 = 6.000 \\
sqrt{(sqr(3)+11\times5)} &= 8.000
\end{align*}
\]

We recommend that you refer to the table below whenever in doubt of the exact rules of operator precedence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Classification (precedence)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>not</code></td>
<td>Boolean negation (highest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>*</code>, <code>/</code>, <code>div</code>, <code>mod</code>, and <code>and</code></td>
<td>Multiplying operators (next highest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>+</code>, <code>-</code>, <code>or</code></td>
<td>Adding operators (third highest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>=</code>, <code>&lt;</code>, <code>&lt;=</code>, <code>&gt;=</code>, <code>&gt;</code>, <code>in</code></td>
<td>Relational operators (lowest).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Boolean expressions have the property that their value may be known before the entire expression has been evaluated. Assume for example, that \(x = 0\). Then the value of the expression

\[(X > 0) \text{ and } (X < 10)\]

is already known to be false after computation of the first factor, and the second need not be evaluated. Whether or not the second factor is evaluated is implementation-dependent. This means that you must assure that the second factor is well defined, independent of the value of the first factor. Hence, if we assume that the array \(A\) has an index ranging from 1 to 10, then the following example is in error! (Arrays are discussed in Chapter 6.)

\[
I := 0; \\
\text{repeat } I := I + 1 \text{ until } (I > 10) \text{ or } (A[I] = 0)
\]

(Note that if no \(A[I] = 0\), a reference to \(A[11]\) will occur.)
Except for file variables (see Chapter 9), assignment is possible to variables of any type. The variable (or the function) and the expression must be assignment compatible. All the cases for assignment-compatibility are listed below:

1. The variable and the expression are the same type except if that type is a file type (see Chapter 9) or contains a file type as a component in another structured type.

2. The variable is real type and the expression is integer type.

3. The variable and the expression are the same or subranges (see Chapter 5) of the same ordinal type, and the value of the expression lies within the closed interval specified by the type of the variable. The value of the expression must be a value of the type of the variable.

4. The variable and the expression are the same set type (see Chapter 8) or are set types with base types which are the same or subranges of the same ordinal type. Either both types or neither type must be packed.

5. The variable and the expression are string types (see Section 6.B) with the same number of elements.

Examples of assignments:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Root1} & := \pi \times X / Y \\
\text{Root2} & := -\text{Root1} \\
\text{Root3} & := (\text{Root1} + \text{Root2}) \times (1.0 + Y) \\
\text{Danger} & := \text{Temp} > \text{VaporPoint} \\
\text{Count} & := \text{Count} + 1 \\
\text{Degree} & := \text{Degree} + 10 \\
\text{SqrPr} & := \text{sqr(pr)} \\
\text{Y} & := \sin(X) + \cos(Y)
\end{align*}
\]

4.B. The Procedure Statement

Another kind of simple statement is the procedure statement, which activates the named procedure which is a subprogram specifying another set of actions to be performed on data. So far in this tutorial we have used the procedures Read, Readln, Write, and Writeln to perform input and output. Procedure statements are discussed fully in Chapter 11.
4.C. The Compound Statement and the Empty Statement

The *compound statement* specifies that its component statements be executed in the same sequence as they are written. The symbols `begin` and `end` act as statement brackets. Note that the statement part or "body" of a program has the form of a compound statement. (See Figures 3.a – 3.c.)

```
program BeginEndExample(Output);
{ Program 4.1 - Illustrate the compound statement. }
var
  Sum: Integer;
begin
  Sum := 3 + 5;
  Writeln(Output, Sum, Sum)
end .
```

*Produces as results:*

```
8    -8
```

Pascal uses the semicolon to separate statements, not to terminate statements; i.e., the semicolon is *not* part of the statement. The explicit rules regarding semicolons are reflected in the syntax of Appendix D. If one had written a semicolon after the second statement in Program 4.1, then an *empty statement* (implying no action) would have been assumed between the semicolon and the symbol `end`. This does no harm, for an empty statement is allowable at this point. Misplaced semicolons can, however, cause troubles — note the example for if statements in Section 4.E.
4.D. Repetitive Statements

Repetitive statements specify that certain statements be repeatedly executed. If the number of repetitions is known beforehand (before the repetitions are begun), the for statement is usually the appropriate construct you can use to express the situation; otherwise use the repeat or while statement.

4.D.1 The while statement

The while statement has the form:

![Diagram of the while statement]

Figure 4.j Syntax diagram for WhileStatement

The statement following the symbol do is executed zero or more times. The expression controlling the repetition must be of type Boolean. Before the statement is executed the expression is evaluated; the statement is executed if the expression is true, otherwise the while statement terminates. Because the expression is evaluated for each iteration, you should be careful to keep the expression as simple as possible.

Program 4.3 raises a real value \( x \) to the power \( y \), where \( y \) is a non-negative integer. A simpler, and evidently correct version is obtained by omitting the inner while statement: the variable Result is then obtained through \( y \) multiplications by \( x \). Note the loop invariant: Result * power(Base,Exponent) = power(X,Y). The inner while statement leaves Result and power(Base,Exponent) invariant, and improves the efficiency of the algorithm.

4.D.2 The repeat statement

The repeat statement has the form:

![Diagram of the repeat statement]

Figure 4.k Syntax diagram for RepeatStatement
program WhileExample(Input, Output);

{ Program 4.2 - Compute the Nth partial sum of the
  harmonic series  \( H(N) = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \ldots + \frac{1}{N} \)
  using a while statement for iteration. }

var
  N: Integer;
  H: Real;
begin
  Read(Input,N); Write(Output,N);
  H := 0;
  while N > 0 do
    begin
      H := H + 1/N; N := N - 1
    end;
  Writeln(Output,H)
end .

Produces as results:

10 2.928968E+00

program Exponentiation(Input, Output);

{ Program 4.3 - Compute \( \text{power}(X,Y) = X \text{ raised to the}
  power Y" using natural exponent. }

var
  Exponent, Y: Integer;
  Base, Result, X: Real;
begin  Read(Input,X,Y); Writeln(Output,X,Y);
  Result := 1; Base:= X; Exponent := Y;
  while Exponent > 0 do
    begin  { Result*power(Base,Exponent) = power(X,Y),
      Exponent > 0 }
      while not Odd(Exponent) do
        begin Exponent := Exponent div 2;
          Base := Sqr(Base)
        end;
      Exponent := Exponent-1; Result := Result * Base
    end;
  Writeln(Output,Result)  { Result = power(X,Y) }
end .

Produces as results:

2.000000E+00 7
1.280000E+02
The sequence of statements between the symbols repeat and until is executed at least once. After each execution of the sequence of statements the Boolean expression is evaluated. Repeated execution is continued until the expression becomes true. Because the expression is evaluated for every iteration, you should be careful to keep it as simple as possible.

```pascal
program RepeatExample(Input, Output);
{ Program 4.4 - Compute the Nth partial sum of the harmonic series \( H(N) = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \ldots + \frac{1}{N} \) using a repeat statement for iteration. }
var
    N: Integer;
    H: Real;
begin
    Read(Input, N); Write(Output, N);
    H := 0;
    repeat
        H := H + 1/N; N := N - 1
    until N = 0;
    Writeln(Output, H)
end.
```

Produces as results:

```
10 2.928968E+00
```

The above program performs correctly for \( N > 0 \). Consider what happens if \( N \leq 0 \). The while–version of the same program is correct for all \( N \), including \( N = 0 \).

Note that it is a sequence of statements that the repeat statement executes; a bracketing pair begin...end would be redundant (but not incorrect).

### 4.D.3 The for statement

The for statement indicates that a statement be repeatedly executed while a progression of values is assigned to the control variable of the for statement. It has the general form:
program ForExample(Input,Output);
{ Program 4.5 - Compute the Nth partial sum of the
  harmonic series  \( H(N) = 1 + 1/2 + 1/3 + \ldots + 1/N \)
  using a for statement for iteration. }
var
  I, N: Integer;
  H: Real;
begin
  Read(Input,N); Write(Output,N);
  H := 0;
  for I := N downto 1 do
    H := H + 1/I;
  Writeln(Output,H)
end.

*Produces as results:*

10 2.928968E+00

The control variable, which appears following the symbol `for`, must be of an ordinal type and declared in the same block in which the for statement appears. The initial value and the final value must be of an ordinal type compatible with the control variable. The control variable must not be altered by the component statement. This prohibits its appearing as a variable on the left-hand side of an assignment, in a `Read` or `Readln` procedure or as the control variable of another for statement, either directly within the for statement or within a procedure or function declared within the same block. The initial and final values
are evaluated only once. If in the case of to (downto) the initial value is greater (less) than the final value, the component statement is not executed. If the component statement is executed, it is an error if either the initial value or final value cannot be assigned to the control variable. The control variable is left undefined upon normal exit from the for statement.

```
program Cosine(Input,Output);
{
  Program 4.6 - Compute the cosine using the
  expansion: \( \cos(X) = 1 - \frac{sqr(X)}{(2\times1)} + \frac{sqr(X)\times{sqr(X)}}{(4\times3\times2\times1)} - \ldots \)
}

const
  Epsilon = 1e-7;
var
  Angle: Real   { radians };  
  ASquared: Real { Angle squared }; 
  Series: Real { cosine series };  
    Term: Real { next term in series };  
    I, N: Integer { number of cosines to compute }; 
    Power: Integer { power of next term }; 

begin 
  Readln(Input,N);
  for I := 1 to N do
    begin
      Readln(Input,Angle);
      Term := 1; Power := 0; Series := 1;
      ASquared := Sqr(Angle);
      while Abs(Term) > Epsilon * Abs(Series) do 
        begin
          Power := Power + 2;
          Term := -Term * ASquared / (Power*(Power-1));
          Series := Series + Term 
        end;
      Writeln(Output, Angle, Series, Power div 2 
        { = terms to convergence }) 
    end.
end

Produces as results:

1.534622E-01 9.882478E-01 3
3.333333E-01 9.449569E-01 4
5.000000E-01 8.775826E-01 5
1.000000E+00 5.403023E-01 6
3.141593E+00-1.000000E+00 10
The following program plots a real–valued function $f(X)$ by letting the $X$–axis run vertically and then writing an asterisk in positions corresponding to the coordinates. The position of the asterisk is obtained by computing $Y = f(X)$, multiplying by a scale factor, rounding the product to the next integer, and then adding a constant and letting the asterisk be preceded by that many blank spaces.

```pascal
program Graph1(Output);
{ Program 4.7 - Generate graphic representation of the function:
  $f(X) = \exp(-X) \times \sin(2\pi X)$ }
const
  XLines = 16 { line spacings per 1 abscissa unit };  
  Scale = 32 { character widths per 1 ordinate unit};  
  ZeroY = 34 { character position of X axis };  
  XLimit = 32 { length of graph in lines };  
var
  Delta: Real { increment along abscissa };  
  TwoPi: Real { $2 \times \pi = 8 \times \text{ArcTan}(1.0)$ };  
  X, Y : Real;  
  Point: Integer;  
  YPosition: Integer;
begin {initialize constants: }
  Delta := 1 / XLines;  
  TwoPi := 8 * ArcTan(1.0);  
  for Point := 0 to XLimit do  
    begin
      X := Delta * Point;  
      Y := Exp(-X) * Sin(TwoPi * X);  
      YPosition := Round(Scale * Y) + ZeroY;  
      repeat
        Write(Output, ' ');  
        YPosition := YPosition - 1
      until YPosition = 0;  
      Writeln(Output, '*');  
    end
end.
```
As a final example of for statements consider this program.

```pascal
program SummingTerms(Output);

{ Program 4.8 - Compute in four ways the series:
  1 - 1/2 + 1/3 - ... + 1/9999 - 1/10000
  1) left to right in succession,
  2) left to right, all pos and neg terms then subtract,
  3) right to left in succession, and
  4) right to left, all pos and neg terms then subtract. }
```
var
  SeriesLR, { series sum left to right in succession}
  SumLRPos, { sum of positive terms, left to right }
  SumLRNeg, { sum of negative terms, left to right }
  SeriesRL, { series sum right to left in succession}
  SumRLPos, { sum of positive terms, right to left }
  SumRLNeg, { sum of negative terms, right to left }
  PosTermLR, { next positive term, left to right }
  NegTermLR, { next negative term, left to right }
  PosTermRL, { next positive term, right to left }
  NegTermRL: Real { next negative term right to left }
  PairsOfTerms: Integer { count of pairs of terms };

begin
  SeriesLR := 0; SumLRPos := 0; SumLRNeg := 0;
  SeriesRL := 0; SumRLPos := 0; SumRLNeg := 0;
  for PairsOfTerms := 1 to 5000 do
    begin
      PosTermLR := 1 / (2 * PairsOfTerms - 1);
      NegTermLR := 1 / (2 * PairsOfTerms);
      PosTermRL := 1 / (10001 - 2 * PairsOfTerms);
      NegTermRL := 1 / (10002 - 2 * PairsOfTerms);
      SeriesLR := SeriesLR + PosTermLR - NegTermLR;
      SumLRPos := SumLRPos + PosTermLR;
      SumLRNeg := SumLRNeg + NegTermLR;
      SeriesRL := SeriesRL + PosTermRL - NegTermRL;
      SumRLPos := SumRLPos + PosTermRL;
      SumRLNeg := SumRLNeg + NegTermRL;
    end;
    Writeln(Output, SeriesLR);
    Writeln(Output, SumLRPos - SumLRNeg);
    Writeln(Output, SeriesRL);
    Writeln(Output, SumRLPos - SumRLNeg)
end.

Produces as results:

6.930919E-01
6.931014E-01
6.930970E-01
6.930971E-01

Why do the four “identical” sums differ?
4.E. Conditional Statements

A conditional statement selects a single statement of its component statements for execution. Pascal offers two kinds of conditional statements, the if and case statements.

4.E.1 The if statement

The if statement specifies that a statement be executed only if a certain condition (Boolean expression) is true. If it is false, then either no statement or the statement following the symbol else is executed.

The form of an if statement is:

```
if Expression then Statement else Statement
```

Figure 4.m Syntax diagram for IfStatement

The expression between the symbols if and then must be of type Boolean. Note that the first form may be regarded as an abbreviation of the second when the alternative statement is the empty statement. Caution: there is never a semicolon before an else! Hence, the text:

```
if P then begin S1; S2; S3 end; else S4
```

is incorrect. More deceptive is the text:

```
if P then; begin S1; S2; S3 end
```

Here, the statement controlled by the if is the empty statement between the then and the semicolon; hence, the compound statement following the if statement will always be executed.

The syntactic ambiguity arising from the construction:

```
if expression1 then if expression2 then statement1 else statement2
```

is resolved by interpreting this construction as equivalent to
if expression1 then
    begin if expression2 then statement1
        else statement2
    end

You are further cautioned that a carelessly formulated if statement can be very costly. Take the example where there are $n$ mutually exclusive conditions, $C_1...C_n$, each instigating a distinct action, $S_i$. Let $P(C_i)$ be the probability of $C_i$ being true, and say that $P(C_i) \geq P(C_j)$ for $i < j$. Then the most efficient sequence of if clauses is:

    if $C_1$ then $S_1$
    else if $C_2$ then $S_2$
    else ...
    else if $C(n-1)$ then $S(n-1)$ else $S_n$

The fulfillment of a condition and the execution of its statement completes the if statement, thereby bypassing the remaining tests.

If $Found$ is a variable of type Boolean, another frequent abuse of the if statement can be illustrated by:

    if $Key = ValueSought$ then $Found := true$
    else $Found := false$

A much simpler statement is:

    $Found := Key = ValueSought$

The following program transforms Arabic numbers to Roman numerals by successively reducing the number in a sieve implemented by using if statements.

program ArabicToRoman(Output);

{ Program 4.9 - Write a table of powers of 2 in
  Arabic numbers and Roman numerals. }

var
    Rem   { remainder },
    Number: Integer;
begin
Number := 1;
repeat
Write(Output, Number, ', ');
Rem := Number;
while Rem >= 1000 do
begin Write(Output, 'M'); Rem := Rem - 1000 end;
if Rem >= 900 then
begin Write(Output, 'CM'); Rem := Rem - 900 end
else
if Rem >= 500 then
begin Write(Output, 'D'); Rem := Rem - 500 end
else
if Rem >= 400 then
begin Write(Output, 'CD'); Rem := Rem - 400 end;
while Rem >= 100 do
begin Write(Output, 'C'); Rem := Rem - 100 end;
if Rem >= 90 then
begin Write(Output, 'XC'); Rem := Rem - 90 end
else
if Rem >= 50 then
begin Write(Output, 'L'); Rem := Rem - 50 end
else
if Rem >= 40 then
begin Write(Output, 'XL'); Rem := Rem - 40 end;
while Rem >= 10 do
begin Write(Output, 'X'); Rem := Rem - 10 end;
if Rem = 9 then
begin Write(Output, 'IX'); Rem := Rem - 9 end
else
if Rem = 5 then
begin Write(Output, 'V'); Rem := Rem - 5 end
else
if Rem = 4 then
begin Write(Output, 'IV'); Rem := Rem - 4 end;
while Rem >= 1 do
begin Write(Output, 'I'); Rem := Rem - 1 end;
Writeln(Output);
Number := Number * 2
until Number > 5000
end.
Produces as results:

1 I
2 II
4 IV
8 VIII
16 XVI
32 XXXII
64 LXIV
128 CXXVIII
256 CCLVI
512 DXII
1024 MXXIV
2048 MMXLVIII
4096 MMMMXCVI

Notice again that each “branch” of an if statement consists of only one statement. Therefore, when more than one action is intended, a compound statement is necessary.

4.E.2 The case statement

The case statement consists of an expression (the selector) and a list of statements, each being associated with one or more constant values of the type of the selector. The selector type must be an ordinal type. Each constant value must be associated with at most one of the statements. The case statement selects for execution the statement that is associated with the current value of the selector; if no such constant is listed, it is an error. Upon completion of the selected statement, control goes to the end of the case statement. The form is:

![Syntax diagram for CaseStatement](image)
**Examples:** (Assume `var i: Integer; ch: Char;`)

```pascal
    case i of
      0: x := 0;
      1: x := sin(x);
      2: x := cos(x);
      3: x := exp(x);
      4: x := ln(x)
    end;

    case ch of
      'A', 'E', 'I', 'O', 'U',
      'a', 'e', 'i', 'o', 'u':
      vowel := vowel + 1;
      '+', '-', '*', '/', '=' , '>', '<',
      '.', ',', '"', '?', '!', ':', ';', ','':
      punc := punc + 1
    end
```

**Notes:**
1. Case constants are not labels (see Sections 3.B and 4.G) and cannot be referenced by a goto statement; their ordering is arbitrary.
2. Although the efficiency of the case statement depends on the implementation, the general rule is to use it when one has several mutually exclusive statements with similar probability of selection.

### 4.F. The With Statement

A *with statement* is used in conjunction with variables having a record type (a structured type). It is discussed in Section 7.C.

### 4.G. The Goto Statement

A *goto statement* is a simple statement indicating that further processing should continue at another part of the program text, namely at the place of the label.

![Figure 4.0](image.png) Syntax diagram for *GotoStatement*
Each label:

1. must appear in the label declaration *prior* to its occurrence in the block.

2. must prefix *one and only one* statement appearing in the statement part of the block.

3. has a scope over the *entire text* of that block excepting any nested blocks that redeclare the label.

At least one of the following three conditions must hold for labels and the goto statements which refer to them:

1. The label prefixes a statement which contains the goto statement.

2. The label prefixes a statement in a statement sequence (within a compound statement or repeat statement) and any statement in the statement sequence contains the goto statement.

3. The label prefixes a statement in the statement sequence forming the statement part of a block that contains a procedure or function declaration that contains the goto.

*Example (program fragment):*

```pascal
label 1; { block A } ...
procedure B; { block B }
  label 3, 5;
  begin
    goto 3;
    3: Writeln('Hello');
    5: if P then
      begin S; goto 5 end; { while P do S }
    goto 1; { this causes early termination of the activation of B }
      Writeln('Goodbye')
    end; { block B }

begin
  B;
  1: Writeln('Edsger')
    { a "goto 3" is not allowed in block A }
end { block A }
```
Jumps from outside of a structured statement into that statement are not allowed. Hence, these examples are incorrect.

**Incorrect examples:**

a) for I := 1 to 10 do  
   begin S1;  
   3: S2  
   end;  
   goto 3

b) if B then goto 3;  
   ...  
   if B1 then 3: S

c) procedure P:  
   procedure Q;  
   begin ...  
   3: S  
   end;  
   begin ...  
   goto 3  
   end.

A goto statement should be reserved for unusual or uncommon situations where the natural structure of an algorithm cannot be reasonably expressed with other structured statements. A common situation is the handling of an unexpected type of input data. A good rule is to avoid the use of jumps to express regular iterations and conditional execution of statements, for such jumps destroy the reflection of the structure of computation in the textual (static) structures of the program.

Moreover, the lack of correspondence between textual and computational (static and dynamic) structure is extremely detrimental to the clarity of the program and makes the task of verification much more difficult. The presence of goto’s in a Pascal program is often an indication that the programmer has not yet learned “to think” in Pascal (as the goto is a necessary construction in some other programming languages).
CHAPTER 5

Enumerated and Subrange Types

We have seen the predefined, simple type identifiers Boolean, Char, Integer and Real. By using these type identifiers you can refer to the existing types that they represent. We now show how new ordinal types can be created by two mechanisms: the enumerated type and the subrange type. The enumerated type creates a new type that is unrelated to any other type, while the subrange type creates a new type that has a subset of the values of another existing ordinal type.

5.A. Enumerated Types

An enumerated type definition specifies an ordered set of values by enumerating the constant identifiers which denote the values.

The ordinal number of the first constant listed is 0; the second one is 1, etc.

Figure 5.a Syntax diagram for EnumeratedType
Example:

```pascal
type Color = (White, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Purple, Black);
Sex = (Male, Female);
Day = (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun);
Operators = (Plus, Minus, Times, Divide);
Continent = (Africa, Antarctica, Asia, Europe, Australia, NorthAmerica, SouthAmerica);
```

Incorrect example:

```pascal
type Workday = (Mon, Tues, Wed, Thur, Fri, Sat);
Free = (Sat, Sun);
```

because the type of `Sat` is ambiguous.

You are already acquainted with the predefined type `Boolean` defined as:

```pascal
type Boolean = (false, true);
```

This automatically defines the constant identifiers `false` and `true` and specifies that `false < true`.

The relational operators `=, <>, <, <=, >=, and >`, are applicable to all enumerated types provided both operands are of the same type. The order is determined by the sequence in which the constants are listed.

Predeclared functions with arguments of ordinal types are:

```pascal
succ(X) e.g. succ(Blue) = Yellow the successor of X
pred(X) pred(Blue) = Red the predecessor of X
ord(X) ord(Blue) = 2 the ordinal number of X
```

Assuming that `C` and `C1` are of type `Color` (above), `B` is of type `Boolean`, and `S1...Sn` are arbitrary statements, then the following are meaningful statements:

```pascal
for C := Black downto Red do S1;
while (C1 <> C) and B do S1;
if C > White then C := pred(C);
case C of
  Red, Blue, Yellow: S1;
  Purple: S2;
  Green, Orange: S3;
  White, Black: S4
end
```
Program 5.1 illustrates some operations on data having an enumerated type.

program DayTime(Output);
{ Program 5.1 - Illustrate enumerated types. }
type
  Days = (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun);
  When = (Past, Present, Future);
var
  Day: Days;
  Yesterday, Today, Tomorrow: Days;
  Time: When;
begin
  Today := Sun  { Pascal can’t read a value of an enumerated type from Input. }
  Time := Present;
repeat
  case Time of
    Present: begin  { Calculate Yesterday } 
      Time := Past;
      if Today = Mon then Yesterday := Sun
      else Yesterday := pred(Today);
      Day := Yesterday; Write(Output, 'Yesterday ');
    end;
    Past: begin  { Calculate Tomorrow } 
      Time := Future;
      if Today = Sun then Tomorrow := Mon
      else Tomorrow := succ(Today);
      Day := Tomorrow; Write(Output, 'Tomorrow ');
    end;
    Future: begin  { Reset to Present } 
      Time := Present;
      Day := Today; Write(Output, 'Today ');
    end;
  end;
  case Day of
    Mon: Write(Output, 'Monday');
    Tue: Write(Output, 'Tuesday');
    Wed: Write(Output, 'Wednesday');
    Thu: Write(Output, 'Thursday');
    Fri: Write(Output, 'Friday');
    Sat: Write(Output, 'Saturday');
    Sun: Write(Output, 'Sunday');
  end;
  Writeln(Output, Ord(Time) - 1)
  until Time = Present
end.
**Enumerated and Subrange Types**

*Produces as results:*

- Yesterday Saturday \(-1\)
- Tomorrow Monday \(1\)
- Today Sunday \(0\)

### 5.B. Subrange Types

A type may be defined as a *subrange* of any other previously defined ordinal type — called its *host type*. The definition of a subrange simply indicates the least and the largest constant value in the subrange, where the lower bound must not be greater than the upper bound. A subrange of the type `Real` is *not* allowed, because real is not an ordinal type.

---

**Figure 5.b** Syntax diagram for `SubrangeType`

The host of the subrange type determines the validity of all operations involving values of the subrange type. Recall that ordinal–type assignment compatibility assumes that the variable and the expression are the same or subranges of the same ordinal type, and the value of the expression lies within the closed interval specified by the type of the variable. For example, given the declaration:

```
var A: 1..10; B: 0..30; C: 20..30;
```

The host type for `A`, `B`, and `C` is `Integer`. Hence the assignments

```
A := B;  C := B;  B := C;
```

are all valid statements, although their execution may sometimes be an error. Whenever ordinal types are discussed throughout this text, the phrase “or subrange thereof” is therefore assumed to be implied and is not always mentioned.
Example:

```pascal
type Days = (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun)  
  { enumerated type };  
Workdays = Mon..Fri  { subrange of days };  
Index = 0..63  { subrange of Integer };  
Letter = 'A'..'Z'  { subrange of Char };  
Natural = 0..MaxInt;  
Positive = 1..MaxInt;
```

Subrange types provide the means for a more explanatory statement of the problem. To the implementer they also suggest an opportunity to conserve memory space and to introduce validity checks upon assignment at run-time. (For an example with subrange types, see Program 6.1.). For example, a variable declared to be of type 0..200 might occupy only one byte (8 bits) on many implementations, whereas a variable of type Integer might occupy many bytes.
Structured Types in General — The Array Type in Particular

Simple types (ordinal and real types) are unstructured types. The other types in Pascal are structured types and pointer types. As structured statements are compositions of other statements, structured types are compositions of other types. It is the type(s) of the components and — most importantly — the structuring method that characterize a structured type.

Figure 6.a  Type Taxonomy of Structured Data Types

55
An option available to each of the structuring methods is an indication of the preferred internal data representation. A structured type definition prefixed with the symbol `packed` signals the compiler to economize storage requirements, even at the expense of additional execution time and a possible expansion of the code, due to the necessary packing and unpacking operations. It is your responsibility to realize if you want this trade of execution efficiency for space. (The actual effects upon efficiency and savings in storage space are implementation dependent, and may, in fact, be zero.)

6.A. The Array Type

An array type consists of a fixed number of components (defined when the array type is introduced) all having the same type, called the *component type*. Each component can be explicitly denoted and directly accessed by the name of the array variable followed by the so-called *index* in square brackets. Indices are computable; their type is called the *index type*. Furthermore, the time required to select (access) a component does not depend upon the value of the selector (index); hence the array is termed a *random-access structure*.

The definition of a new array type specifies both the component type and the index type. The general form is:

```
type A = array [T1] of T2;
```

where `A` is a new type identifier; `T1` is the index type, which must be ordinal, and `T2` is any type.
Arrays provide a means of grouping under a single name several variables having identical characteristics. An array variable declaration gives a name to the entire array structure. Two operations valid for entire array variables are assignment and selection of components. A component is selected by specifying the name of the array variable followed by an ordinal expression enclosed in square brackets. The operations permitted on such a component variable are those which are valid for any variable of the component type of that array type.

![Syntax Diagram for ComponentVariable](image)

**Figure 6.c** Syntax Diagram for *ComponentVariable*

**Examples of variable declarations:**

- **Memory:** array [0..Max] of Integer
- **Sick:** packed array [Days] of Boolean

**Examples of sample assignments:**

- **Memory[I+J] := X**
- **Sick[Mon] := true**

(Of course these examples assume the definition of the auxiliary identifiers.)

Programs 6.1 and 6.2 illustrate the use of arrays. Consider how you would extend Program 6.2 to plot more than one function — both with and without the use of an array.
program MinMax(Input,Output);
{ Program 6.1 - Find the largest and smallest number
 in a given list. }
const
MaxSize = 20;
type
ListSize = 1..MaxSize;
var
Item: ListSize;
Min, Max, First, Second: Integer;
A: array [ListSize] of Integer;

begin
for Item := 1 to MaxSize do
begin Read(Input, A[Item]);
   Write(Output, A[Item] :4)
end;
Writeln(Output);
Min := A[1]; Max := Min; Item := 2;
while Item < MaxSize do
begin First := A[Item]; Second := A[Item+1];
   if First > Second then
      begin
      if First > Max then Max := First;
      if Second < Min then Min := Second
      end
   else
      begin
      if Second > Max then Max := Second;
      if First < Min then Min := First
      end;
   Item := Item + 2
end;
if Item = MaxSize then
   else
Writeln(Output, Max, Min)
end.

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

35 68 94 7 88 -5 -3 12 35 9 -6 3 0 -2
74 88 52 43 5 4
94    -6
program Graph2(Output);

{ Program 6.2 - Generate graphic representation (with X-axis) of the function: 
f(X) = exp(-X) * sin(2*Pi*X) 
Compare with Program 4.7. }

const
XLines = 16 { line spacings per 1 abscissa unit };
Scale = 32 { character widths per 1 ordinate unit};
ZeroY = 34 { character position of X axis };
XLimit = 32 { length of graph in lines };
YLimit = 68 { height of graph in character widths};
type
Domain = 1..YLimit;
var
Delta: Real { increment along abscissa };
TwoPi: Real { 2 * Pi = 8 * ArcTan(1.0) };
X, Y: Real;
Point: 0 .. XLimit;
Plot, YPosition, Extent: Domain;
YPlot: array [Domain] of Char;

begin { initialize constants: }
  Delta := 1 / Xlines;
  TwoPi := 8 * ArcTan(1.0);
  for Plot := 1 to YLimit do
    YPlot[Plot] := ' ';
  for Point := 0 to XLimit do
    begin
      X := Delta * Point;
      Y := Exp(-X) * Sin(TwoPi * X);
      YPlot[ZeroY] := ' ';
      YPosition := Round(Scale * Y) + ZeroY;
      YPlot[YPosition] := '*' ;
      if YPosition < ZeroY then Extent := ZeroY
      else Extent := YPosition;
      for Plot := 1 to Extent do
        Write(Output, YPlot[Plot]);
      Writeln(Output); YPlot[YPosition] := ' ';
    end
  end
end

Since \( T_2 \) may be any type, the components of arrays may be structured. In particular, if \( T_2 \) is also an array type, then the original array type \( A \) is said to be **multidimensional**. Hence, the declaration of a multidimensional array \( M \) can be so formulated:

\[
\text{var } M: \text{array } [A..B] \text{ of array } [C..D] \text{ of } T;
\]
and then
\[ M[I][J] \]
denotes the component \( J \) (of type \( T \)) of component \( I \) of \( M \).

For multidimensional arrays, it is customary to make these convenient abbreviations:

\[ \text{var } M: \text{array } [A..B,C..D] \text{ of } T; \]

and

\[ M[I,J] \]

We may regard \( M \) as a matrix and say that \( M[I,J] \) is component \( J \) (in column \( J \)) of component \( I \) of \( M \) (of row \( I \) of \( M \)).

Arrays are not limited to two dimensions, for \( T \) can again be a structured type. In general, the (abbreviated) form is:

\[
\text{-packed} \rightarrow \text{array} \rightarrow [ \rightarrow \text{OrdinalType} \rightarrow ] \rightarrow \text{of} \rightarrow \text{Type}
\]

\textbf{Figure 6.d} Syntax diagram for \textit{ArrayType}

If \( n \) index types are specified, the array is said to be \( n \)-dimensional, and a component is denoted by \( n \) index expressions.

If \( A \) and \( B \) are array variables of the same type, then the assignment statement

\[ A := B \]

is allowed if the arrays are component–wise assignable:

\[ A[i] := B[i] \]

(for each \( i \) that is a value of the index type), and is an abbreviation for the assignment of each corresponding component.
program MatrixMul(Input,Output);
{ Program 6.3 - Matrix Multiplication }
const
  M = 4;  P = 3;  N = 2;
var
  I: 1..M;
  J: 1..N;
  K: 1..P;
  Sum, Element: Integer;
  A: array [1..M, 1..P] of Integer;
  B: array [1..P, 1..N] of Integer;
  C: array [1..M, 1..N] of Integer;
begin  { Assign initial values to A and B: }
  for I := 1 to M do begin
    for K := 1 to P do begin
      Read(Input,Element);
      Write(Output,Element);
      A[I,K] := Element
    end;
    Writeln(Output)
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  for K := 1 to P do begin
    for J := 1 to N do begin
      Read(Input,Element);
      Write(Output,Element);
      B[K,J] := Element
    end;
    Writeln(Output)
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  { Multiply A and B to get C: }
  for I := 1 to M do begin
    for J := 1 to N do begin
      Sum := 0;
      for K := 1 to P do
      C[I,J] := Sum;  Write(Output,Sum)
    end;
    Writeln(Output)
  end;
  Writeln(Output)
end .
Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-9</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the index types for arrays A, B, and C in the above program are fixed. If we could write a generalized matrix–multiply subprogram for a library, we need a facility to provide for adjustable index types. Pascal provides conformant–array parameters for this purpose (see Section 11.A.2); and Program 11.4, MatrixMul2, illustrates their use.

6.B. String Types

Strings were defined earlier as sequences of characters enclosed in apostrophes (Section 1.E). Strings consisting of a single character are the constants of the standard type Char (Section 2.D); those of \( N \) characters (\( N > 1 \)), are constants of a type defined by:

\[
\text{packed array } [1..N] \text{ of Char}
\]

Such a type is called a string type.

The assignment

\[ A := E \]

where array variable \( A \) and expression \( E \) have any string types with the same number of components is valid. Similarly, the relational operators (=, <>, <, >, <=, and <=) may be used to compare any two strings that have the same number of components; the ordering considers the first
element \( A[1] \) to be most significant and is determined by the ordering of the predeclared type \texttt{Char}.

6.C. Pack and Unpack

Access to individual components of packed arrays is often costly, and depending on the situation and the particular Pascal implementation, sometimes you are advised to pack or unpack a packed array in a single operation. This is possible through the predeclared transfer procedures Pack and Unpack. Letting \( U \) be a non-packed array variable of type

\[
\text{array } [A..D] \text{ of } T
\]

\( T \) cannot be a type containing a file type 

and \( P \) be a packed array variable of type

\[
\text{packed array } [B..C] \text{ of }
\]

where \( \text{ord}(D) - \text{ord}(A) \geq \text{ord}(') - \text{ord}(B) \) then

\[
\text{Pack } (U,I,P)
\]

means to pack that part of \( U \) beginning at component \( I \) into \( P \), and

\[
\text{Unpack } (P,U,I)
\]

means to unpack \( P \) into \( U \) beginning at component \( I \).
Record Types

Record types are perhaps the most flexible of data constructs. Conceptually, a record type is a template for a structure whose parts may have quite distinct characteristics. For example, assume we wish to record information about a person. Known are the name, height, sex, date of birth, number of dependents, and marital status. Furthermore, if the person is married or widowed, the date of the (last) marriage is given; if divorced, the date of the (most recent) divorce and whether this is the first divorce or not; and if single, no other information is of interest. All of this information can be expressed in a single “record,” and each piece of information can be accessed separately.

7.A. Fixed Records

More formally, a record is a structure consisting of a fixed number of components, called fields. Unlike the array, components of a record type can have different types and cannot be indexed by an expression. A record–type definition specifies for each component its type and an identifier, the field identifier, to denote it. The scope of a field identifier is the innermost record in which it is defined. The two operations valid for entire record variables are assignment and selection of components.

In order that the type of selected component be evident from the program text (without executing the program), the record selector consists of fixed field identifiers rather than a computable index value.
To take a simple example, assume we wish to compute with complex numbers of the form $a + bi$, where $a$ and $b$ are real numbers and $i$ is the square root of $-1$. There is no predefined type “complex.” However, we can easily define a record type to represent complex numbers. This record would need two fields, both of type Real, for the real and imaginary parts. The syntax necessary to express this is:

![Figure 7.a](image)

**Figure 7.a** Syntax diagram for *RecordType*

![Figure 7.b](image)

**Figure 7.b** Syntax diagram for *FieldList*

![Figure 7.c](image)

**Figure 7.c** Syntax diagram for *FixedPart*

![Figure 7.d](image)

**Figure 7.d** Syntax diagram for *RecordSection*
Applying these rules, we can state the following definition and declaration:

```pascal
type Complex = record Re, Im: Real end;
var Z: Complex;
```

where `Complex` is a type identifier, `Re` and `Im` are identifiers of fields, and `Z` is a variable of type `Complex`. Consequently, `Z` is a record made up of two components or fields. See Program 7.1.

To access a record component, the name of the record is followed by a period, and the respective field identifier (see Figure 6.c). For example, the following assigns $5 + 3i$ to `Z`:

```pascal
Z.Re := 5;
Z.Im := 3
```

Likewise, a type representing a date can be defined as:

```pascal
Date = packed record
  Year: 1900..2100;
  Mo: (Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec);
  Day: 1..31
end
```

Note: The type `Date` also includes, for instance, a 31st April. A toy can be described as:

```pascal
Toy = record
  Kind: (Ball, Top, Boat, Doll, Blocks, Game, Model, Book);
  Cost: Real;
  Received: Date;
  Enjoyed: (A lot, Some, A little, None);
  Broken, Lost: Boolean
end
```

A homework assignment can be defined as:

```pascal
Assignment = packed record
  Subject: (History, Language, Lit, Math, Psych, Science);
  Assigned: Date;
  Grade: 0..4;
  Weight: 1..10
end
```
program ComplexArithmetic(output);
{ Program 7.1 - Illustrate complex numbers operations. }
const
Increment = 4;
type
Complex =
record
Re, Im: Real
end;
var
X, Y: Complex;
Pair: Integer;
begin
X.Re := 2; X.Im := 5; { initialize X }
Y := X; { initialize Y }
for Pair := 1 to 5 do
begin
  Writeln(output, 'X = ', X.Re:5:1, X.Im:5:1, 'i');
  Writeln(output, 'Y = ', Y.Re:5:1, Y.Im:5:1, 'i');
  {X + Y}
  Writeln(output, 'Sum = ', X.Re + Y.Re:5:1,
            X.Im + Y.Im:5:1, 'i');
  {X * Y}
  Writeln(output, 'Product = ',
            X.Re * Y.Re - X.Im*Y.Im:5:1,
            X.Re * Y.Im + X.Im*Y.Re:5:1, 'i');
  Writeln(output);
  X.Re := X.Re + Increment;
  X.Im := X.Im - Increment
end
end.

*Produces as results:*

X = 2.0 5.0i
Y = 2.0 5.0i
Sum = 4.0 10.0i
Product = -21.0 20.0i

X = 6.0 1.0i
Y = 2.0 5.0i
Sum = 8.0 6.0i
Product = 7.0 32.0i
If the record is itself nested within another structure, the naming of the record variable reflects this structure. For example, assume we wish to record the most recent smallpox vaccination for each member in a family. A possibility is to define the members as an enumerated type, and then keep the dates in an array of records:

```
type FamilyMember =
    (Father, Mother, Child1, Child2, Child3);
var VaccinationDate: array [FamilyMember] of Date;
```

An update might then be recorded as:

```
VaccinationDate[Child3].Mo := Apr;
VaccinationDate[Child3].Day := 23;
VaccinationDate[Child3].Year := 1973
```

7.B.  Variant Records

Sometimes we may want to include information in a record structure which depends on some other information already in the record. We can define a variant record type which includes additional fields depending on the value of another field.

The syntax for a record type makes provisions for a variant part, implying that a record type may be specified as consisting of several variants. This means that different variables, although said to be of the same type, may assume structures which differ in the number and types of components.
Each variant is characterized by a list, in parentheses, of declarations of its pertinent components. Each list is preceded by one or more constants, and the set of lists is preceded by a case clause specifying the data type of these constants (i.e., the type according to which the variants are discriminated).

As an example, assume the existence of a

type
    MaritalStatus = (Married, Widowed, Divorced, Single)

Then we can describe persons by data of the

    type    Person =
        record
            { fields common to all persons go here };
        case MaritalStatus of
            Married: ( {fields of married persons only} );
            Single: ( {fields of single persons only} );
            ...
        end

Note that every value of the type by which the variants are discriminated (the so-called tag type) must be explicitly listed with one of the variants. In the above example the constants Widowed and Divorced must also appear (along with Married and Single) for the example to be valid.

Usually, a component (field) of the record itself indicates its currently valid variant. For example, the above defined person record is likely to contain a common field:
MS: MaritalStatus

This frequent situation can be abbreviated by including the declaration of the discriminating component — the so-called *tag field* — in the case clause itself, i.e., by writing

```plaintext
case MS: MaritalStatus of
```

It is helpful to “outline” the information about a person before defining it as a variant record structure.

I. Person
   A. name (last, first)
   B. height (natural number)
   C. sex (male, female)
   D. date of birth (year, month, day)
   E. number of dependents (natural number)
   F. marital status
      if married, widowed
         a. date of marriage (year, month, day)
      if divorced
         a. date of divorce (year, month, day)
         b. first divorce (false, true)
      if single

Figure 7.g is a corresponding picture of two “sample” people with different attributes.

![Figure 7.g Two Sample People](image)
A record defining Person can now be formulated as:

```pascal
type String15 = packed array [1..15] of Char;
Status = (Married, Widowed, Divorced, Single);
Date = packed record
  Year: 1900..2000;
  Mo: (Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec);
  Day: 1..31;
end;
Natural = 0..MaxInt;
Person = record
  Name: record First, Last: String15 end;
  Height: Natural (in centimeters);
  Sex: (Male, Female);
  Birth: Date;
  Depdts: Natural;
  case MS: Status of
    Married, Widowed: (MDate: Date);
    Divorced: (DDate: Date;
        FirstD: Boolean);
    Single: ()
  end { Person }
```

**Notes:**

1. All field names must be distinct — even if they occur in different variants.
2. If a variant is empty (i.e., has no fields), the form is:
   
   C: ()
3. A field list can have only one variant part and it must follow the fixed part of the record.
4. A variant may itself contain a variant part; hence variant parts can be nested.
5. The scope of enumerated type constant identifiers that are introduced in a record type extends over the enclosing block.

Referencing a record component is essentially a simple linear reconstruction of the outline. As an example, assume a variable P of type Person and “create” the second of the model people.
P.Name.Last := 'Whitcomb';
P.Name.First := 'William';
P.Height := 186;
P.Sex := Male;
P.Birth.Year := 1951;
P.Birth.Mo := Sep; P.Birth.Day := 12;
P.Depdts := 1;
P.MS := Single;

7.C. The With Statement

The above notation can be a bit tedious, and you may wish to abbreviate it using the with statement. The with statement effectively opens the scope containing the field identifiers of the specified record variable, so that the field identifiers may occur as variable identifiers (thereby providing an opportunity for the Pascal compiler to optimize the qualified statement). The general form is:

```
with P do begin
    with Name do begin
        Last := 'Whitcomb';
        First := 'William';
    end;
    Height := 186;
    Sex := Male;
    with Birth do begin
        Year := 1951; Mo := Sep; Day := 12
    end;
```

**Figure 7.h** Syntax diagram for WithStatement

Within the qualified statement of the with statement we denote a field of a record variable by designating only its field identifier (without preceding it with the entire record variable).

The with statement below is equivalent to the preceding series of assignments:

```
with P do begin
    with Name do begin
        Last := 'Whitcomb';
        First := 'William';
    end;
    Height := 186;
    Sex := Male;
    with Birth do begin
        Year := 1951; Mo := Sep; Day := 12
    end;
```
Depds := 1;
MS := Single;
end

Likewise,

var CurrentDate: Date;
...
with Currentdate do
if Mo = Dec then
    begin Mo := Jan; Year := Year + 1 end
else Mo := succ(Mo)

is equivalent to

var CurrentDate: Date;
...
if CurrentDate.Mo = Dec then
    begin CurrentDate.Mo := Jan;
        CurrentDate.Year := CurrentDate.Year + 1 end
else CurrentDate.Mo := succ(CurrentDate.Mo)

And the following accomplishes the vaccine update example given earlier:

with VaccinationDate[Child3] do
    begin Year := 1973; Mo := Apr; Day := 23 end

When the with statement is executed, a reference to the record variable is established prior to the execution of the qualified statement. Therefore assignments made by the qualified statement to any elements of the record variable list will not change the identity of the record variable.

For example:

var Who: FamilyMember;
...
Who := Father;
with VaccinationDate[Who] do begin
    Who := Mother;
    Mo := Jul; Day := 7; Year := 1947
end

The with statement sets the fields of VaccinationDate[Father].
Nested with statements can be abbreviated. The form:

\[
\text{with R}_1, \text{R}_2, \ldots, \text{R}_n \text{ do } S
\]

is equivalent to

\[
\text{with R}_1 \text{ do} \\
\quad \text{with R}_2 \text{ do} \\
\quad \quad \ldots \\
\quad \quad \text{with R}_n \text{ do } S
\]

Thus the example defining a person \( P \) can be rewritten:

\[
\text{with } P, \text{Name, Birth do begin} \\
\quad \text{Last} := \text{‘Whitcomb’} \\
\quad \text{First} := \text{‘William’} \\
\quad \text{Height} := 186; \\
\quad \text{Sex} := \text{Male}; \\
\quad \text{Year} := 1951; \\
\quad \text{Mo} := \text{Sep}; \\
\quad \text{Day} := 12; \\
\quad \text{Depdts} := 1; \\
\quad \text{MS} := \text{Single}; \\
\quad \text{end \{ with \}}
\]

An example which illustrates scopes of field identifiers follows. Whereas:

\[
\text{var } A: \text{array } [2..8] \text{ of Integer; } \\
A: 2..8;
\]

is not allowed, because the definition of \( A \) is ambiguous,

\[
\text{var } A: \text{Integer}; \\
B: \text{record} \\
\quad A: \text{Real}; B: \text{Boolean} \\
\quad \text{end};
\]

is allowed, because the notation for the integer \( A \) is easily distinguishable from the real \( B.A \). Likewise, the record variable \( B \) is distinguishable from the Boolean \( B.B \). Within the qualified statement \( S \) in

\[
\text{with } B \text{ do } S
\]

the identifiers \( A \) and \( B \) now denote the components \( B.A \) and \( B.B \) respectively, and the integer variable identified by \( A \) is inaccessible.
A set type provides a compact structure for recording a collection of values having the same ordinal type. More precisely, a set type defines the set of values that is the power set of its base type, i.e., the set of all possible subsets of values of the base type, including the empty set. Therefore, a single value of a set type is a set, and the elements of that set are values of the base type. A set is also a random-access structure whose elements all have the same base type, which must be an ordinal type.

Operations valid for set values are assignment, the familiar set operations (e.g., set union), equality, and selection of components by testing for membership (see below). Set values may be built up from set elements by the operation of set construction. Implementations of Pascal usually define limits for the size of sets, which can be quite small (e.g., the number bits in a machine "word"). The limit applies directly to the range of the base type of the set type.
8.A. Set Constructors

A set value can be specified by a set constructor which contains descriptions of the set elements separated by commas and enclosed in square brackets. An element description can be an expression, the value of which is the element, or a range of the form low..high, where the values of the expressions low and high are the lower and upper bounds of a collection of elements. If the lower bound is greater than the upper bound of the range (i.e., low > high), no elements are described.

The expressions must all have the same ordinal type which is the base type of the set constructor type. The set constructor [ ] denotes the empty set of every set type. Set constructors do not carry full type information [see Reference 10], such as whether or not the set is packed. Therefore the type of a set constructor is both packed and unpacked to be type compatible with other sets in set expressions.

![Figure 8.b Syntax diagram for SetConstructor](image)

Examples of set constructors:

```
[13]
[i+j, i-j]
['0'..'9']
[red, yellow, blue]
['a','b','c','d','e','f','g','h','i','j','k','l','m','n','o','p','q','r','s','t','u','v','w','x','y','z']
```
8.B. Set Operations

If \( x \) is a set variable, and \( E \) is a set expression, then

\[
x := E
\]

is allowed if all members of \( E \) are in the base type of \( x \), and the types of \( x \) and \( E \) both are packed or neither is packed. The following operators are applicable on all objects with set structure. Assume \( A \) and \( B \) are set values of the same type:

\[
A + B \quad \text{set union} \text{ of all elements in both } A \text{ and } B.
\]

\[
A * B \quad \text{set intersection} \text{ of all elements common to both } A \text{ and } B.
\]

\[
A - B \quad \text{set difference} \text{ of all elements of } A \text{ that are not also elements of } B.
\]

Five relational operators are applicable to set operands. Assume \( A \) and \( B \) are set expressions of the same type and \( e \) is an ordinal expression of the base type.

\[
e \in A \quad \text{set membership}. \text{ The result is true when } e \text{ is an element of } A, \text{ otherwise false.}
\]

\[
A = B \quad \text{set equality}.
\]

\[
A <> B \quad \text{set inequality}.
\]

\[
A <= B \quad \text{set inclusion}; \text{ true if } A \text{ is a proper or improper subset of } B.
\]

\[
A >= B \quad \text{set inclusion}; \text{ true if } B \text{ is a proper or improper subset of } A.
\]

Examples of declarations

```pascal
type Primary = (Red, Yellow, Blue);
Color = set of Primary;
var Huel, Hue2: Color;
Vowels, Consonants, Letters: set of Char;
Opcode: set of 0..5;
Add: Boolean;
Ch: Char;
```
**Examples of assignments**

Huel := [Red]; Hue2 := [];
Hue2 := Hue2 + [succ(Red)];
Vowels := ['A','E','I','O','U'];
Consonants := Letters - Vowels;
Add := [2,3] <= Opcode

Set operations are intended to be relatively fast and can be used to eliminate more complicated tests. A simpler test for:

if (Ch='A') or (Ch='E') or (Ch='I') or (Ch='O') or (Ch='U') then S

is:

if Ch in ['A','E','I','O','U'] then S

program Convert(Input,Output);
{ Program 8.1 - Read a sequence of digits and convert them to the integer they represent. Assume no leading sign. }
var
Ch: Char;
Digits: set of '0'..'9';
Number: Integer;
begin
Digits := ['0'..'9'] { initialize value of the set};
Read(Input, Ch);
Number := 0;
while Ch in Digits do
begin
Number := Number * 10 + Ord(Ch) - Ord('O');
Writeln(Output, Number);
Read(Input, Ch)
end
{ Ch contains the character following the integer }
end.

**Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):**

4
43
432
4321
program SetOperations (Output);  
{ program 8.2 - Illustrate set operations. }  
type  
    Days = (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun);  
    Week = set of Days;  
var  
    FullWeek, Work, Free: set of Days;  
    Day: Days;  
procedure Check (W: Week)  
{ procedures are introduced in Chapter 11 }  
var D: Days;  
begin  
    for D := Mon to Sun do  
        if D in W then Write(Output, 'x')  
        else Write(Output, '');  
    Writeln(Output)  
end { Check };  
begin  
    Work := []; Free := []; FullWeek := [Mon..Sun];  
    Day := Sat;  
    Free := [Day] + Free + [Sun];  
    Check(Free);  
    Work := FullWeek - Free;  
    Check(Work);  
    if Free <= FullWeek then Write(Output, 'O');  
    if FullWeek >= Work then Write(Output, 'K');  
    if not (Work >= Free) then Write(Output, 'Jack');  
    if [Sat] <= Work then Write(Output, 'Forget it!');  
    Writeln(Output)  
end .  

Produces as results:  

oooooxx  
xxxxxoo  
OK Jack  

8.C. On Program Development  
Programming — in the sense of designing and formulating algorithms and data structures — is in general a complicated process requiring the mastery of numerous details and specific techniques. Only in exceptional cases will there be a single good solution. Usually, so many
solutions exist that the choice of an optimal program requires a thorough analysis not only of the available algorithms and computer systems but also of the way in which the program will most frequently be used.

Consequently, the construction of a program should consist of a sequence of deliberations, investigations, and design decisions. In the early stages, attention is best concentrated on the global problems, and the first draft of a solution may pay little attention to details. As the design process progresses, we can split the problem into sub-problems, and gradually give more consideration to the details of problem specification and to the characteristics of the available tools. The terms *stepwise refinement* [Reference 2] and *structured programming* [Reference 4] are associated with this approach.

The remainder of this chapter illustrates the development of a program by rewording (to be consistent with Pascal notation) an example C.A.R. Hoare presents in the book *Structured Programming* [Reference 4, “Notes on Data Structuring”].

The problem is to generate the prime numbers falling in the range 2..n, where n \( \geq 2 \). After a comparison of the various algorithms, that of Eratosthenes’ sieve is chosen because of its simplicity (no multiplications or divisions).

The first formulation is descriptive.

1. Put all the numbers between 2 and n into the “sieve.”
2. Select and remove the smallest number remaining in the sieve.
3. Include this number in the “primes.”
4. Step through the sieve, removing all multiples of this number.
5. If the sieve is not empty, repeat steps 2–5.

Although initialization of variables is the first step in the execution of a program, it is often the last in the development process. Full comprehension of the algorithm is a prerequisite for making the proper initializations; updating these initializations with each program modification is necessary to keep the program running. (Unfortunately, updating is not always sufficient!).
Hoare chooses a set type with elements 2..n to represent both the sieve and the primes. The following is a slight variation of the program sketch he presents.

program Prime1;

{ Program 8.3 - Use sets to implement Sieve of Erastosthenes. }

const
N = 10000;
type
Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
Sieve, Primes: set of ..N;
NextPrime, Multiple: Positive;
begin {initialize}
Sieve := [2..N]; Primes := []; NextPrime := 2;
repeat {find next prime}
while not (NextPrime in: Sieve) do
NextPrime := Succ(NextPrime);
Primes := Primes + [NextPrime];
Multiple := NextPrime;
while Multiple <= N do {eliminate}
begin Sieve := Sieve - [Multiple];
Multiple := Multiple + NextPrime;
end
until Sieve = []
end.

As an exercise Hoare proposes rewriting the program, so that the sets only represent the odd numbers. The following is one solution. Note the close correlation with the first solution.

program Prime2;

{ Program 8.4 - Use sets to implement Sieve of Erastosthenes; represent odd numbers only. }

const
N = 5000 { N' = N div 2 }; 
type
Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
Sieve, Primes: set of 2..N;
NextPrime, Multiple, NewPrime: Positive;
begin {initialize}
  Sieve := [2 .. N]; Primes := []; NextPrime := 2;
  repeat { find next prime }
    while not (NextPrime in Sieve) do
      NextPrime := Succ(NextPrime);
      Primes := Primes + [NextPrime];
      NewPrime := 2 * NextPrime - 1;
      Multiple := NextPrime;
      while Multiple <= N do { eliminate }
        begin Sieve := Sieve - [Multiple];
        Multiple := Multiple + NewPrime;
        end
    until Sieve = []
end .

A design goal for Pascal implementations is that all basic set operations execute relatively fast. Some implementations restrict the maximum size of sets according to their “wordlength,” so that each element of the base set is represented by one bit (0 meaning absence, 1 meaning presence). Most implementations would not accept a set with 10,000 elements. These considerations lead to an adjustment in the data representation, as shown in Program 8.5.

A large set can be represented as an array of smaller sets such that each “fits” into a few words (implementation dependent). The following program uses the second sketch as an abstract model of the algorithm. Sieve and Primes are redefined as arrays of sets; Next is defined as a record.

program Prime3(Output);

{ Program 8.5 - Generate the primes between 3 .. 10000 using a sieve containing odd integers in this range. }

const
  SetSize = 128 { implementation-dependent; >= 2 };  
  MaxElement = 127 { SetSize - 1 }; 
  SetParts = 39 { = 10000 div Setsize div 2 }; 

type
  Natural = 0 .. MaxInt;
var
    Sieve, Primes:
        array [0..SetParts] of
            set of 0..MaxElement;
NextPrime:
    record
        Part: 0 .. SetParts;
        Element: 0 .. MaxElement
    end;
Multiple, NewPrime: Natural;
P, N, Count: Natural;
Empty: Boolean;
begin {initialize}
    for P := 0 to SetParts do begin
        Sieve[P] := [0 .. MaxElement]; Primes[P] := []
    end;
    Sieve[0] := Sieve[0] - [0]; Empty := False;
    NextPrime.Part := 0; NextPrime.Element := 1;
with NextPrime do
    repeat { find next prime }
        while not (Element in Sieve[Part]) do
            Element := Succ(Element);
            Primes[Part] := Primes[Part] + [Element];
            NewPrime := 2 * Element + 1;
            Multiple := Element; P := Part;
            while P <= Element do { eliminate }
                begin
                    Sieve[P] := Sieve[P] - [Multiple];
                    P := P + Part * ;
                    Multiple := Multiple + NewPrime;
                    while Multiple > MaxElement do
                        begin
                            P := P + 1;
                            Multiple := Multiple - SetSize
                        end;
                end;
        if Sieve[Part] = [] then
            begin
                Empty := True; Element := 0
            end;
        while Empty and (Part < SetParts) do begin
            Part := Part + 1; Empty := Sieve[Part] = []
        end
    until Empty;
Count := 0;
for P := 0 to SetParts do
  for N := 0 to MaxElement do
    if N in Primes[P] then
      begin
        Write(Output, 2 * N + 1 +
              P * SetSize * 2:6);
        Count := Count + 1;
        if (Count mod 8) = 0 then Writeln(Output)
      end
  end.

Produces as results:

    3  5  7  11  13  17  19  23
    29 31 37 41 43 47 53 59
    61 67 71 73 79 83 89 97
  101 103 107 109 113 127 131 137
          .  .  .  .  .  .  .  .
          .  .  .  .  .  .  .  .
          .  .  .  .  .  .  .  .
  9871 9883 9887 9901 9907 9923 9929 9931
  9941 9949 9967 9973 10007 10009 10037 10039
10061 10067 10069 10079 10091 10093 10099 10103
10111 10133 10139 10141 10151 10159 10163 10169
CHAPTER 9

File Types

In many ways the simplest structuring method is the sequence. In the data-processing profession the generally accepted term to describe a sequence is a *sequential file*. Pascal uses simply the word *file* to specify a structure consisting of a sequence of components—all of which have the same type. A special kind of file called a *textfile* consists of a sequence of variable-length lines of characters and forms the basis for legible communications between people and computer systems.

9.A. The File Structure

A natural ordering of the components is defined through the sequence, and at any instance only one component is directly accessible. The other components are accessible by progressing sequentially through the file. The number of components, called the *length* of the file, is not fixed by the file-type definition. This is a characteristic which clearly distinguishes the file from the array. A file with no components is said to be *empty*. A file type, therefore, differs from array, record, and set types because it is a sequential-access structure whose components all have the same type.
The declaration of every file variable $F$ automatically introduces a buffer variable, denoted by $F\uparrow$, of the component type. It can be considered as an access to the file through which one can either inspect (read) the value of existing components or generate (write) new components, and which is automatically advanced by certain file operations. Assignment is not possible to entire file variables. Rather the buffer variable is used to append components one at a time, in a one–way (sequential) manner. The buffer variable becomes undefined if the file is positioned past its last component.

The sequential processing, varying length, and the existence of a buffer variable suggest that files may be associated with secondary storage and peripherals. Exactly how the components are allocated is implementation–dependent, but we can assume that only some of the components are present in primary storage at any one time, and only the component indicated by $F\uparrow$ is directly accessible.

When the buffer variable $F\uparrow$ is moved beyond the end of a file $F$, the predeclared Boolean function $\text{eof}(F)$ returns the value true, otherwise false. The basic file–handling procedures are:

$\text{Reset}(F)$ initiates inspection (reading) of $F$ by placing the file at its beginning. If $F$ is not empty, the value of the first component of $F$ is assigned to $F\uparrow$ and $\text{eof}(F)$ becomes false.
Rewrite($F$) initiates generation (writing) of the file $F$. The current value of $F$ is replaced with the empty file. $\text{Eo}f(F)$ becomes true, and a new file may be written.

Get($F$) advances the file to the next component and assigns the value of this component to the buffer variable $F\uparrow$. If no next component exists, then $\text{eof}(F)$ becomes true, and $F\uparrow$ becomes undefined. The effect of Get($F$) is an error if $\text{eof}(F)$ is true prior to its execution or if $F$ is being generated.

Put($F$) appends the value of the buffer variable $F\uparrow$ to the file $F$. The effect is an error unless prior to execution the predicate $\text{eof}(F)$ is true. $\text{eof}(F)$ remains true, and $F\uparrow$ becomes undefined. Put($F$) is an error if $F$ is being inspected.

In principle, all the operations of sequential-file generation and inspection can be expressed entirely in terms of the four primitive file operators and the predicate $\text{eof}$. In practice, it is often natural to combine the operation of advancing the file position with the access to the buffer variable. We therefore introduce the two procedures Read and Write as follows:

Read($F,X$) (for $X$, a variable) is equivalent to

$$\begin{align*}
X & := F\uparrow; \text{Get}(F) \\
\end{align*}$$

Write($F,E$) (for $E$, an expression) is equivalent to

$$\begin{align*}
F\uparrow & := E; \text{Put}(F) \\
\end{align*}$$

Read and Write are in fact special procedures extended to accept a variable number of actual parameters ($V_1...V_n$ are variables and $E_1...E_n$ are expressions):

Read($F,V_1,...,V_n$) is equivalent to the statement

$$\begin{align*}
\text{begin} \text{Read}(F,V_1);...;\text{Read}(F,V_n) \text{ end}
\end{align*}$$
Write(F,E1,...,En) is equivalent to the statement
begin Write(F,E1);...;Write(F,En) end

The advantage of using these procedures lies not only in brevity, but also in conceptual simplicity, since the existence of a buffer variable \( F \), which is sometimes undefined, may be ignored. The buffer variable may, however, be useful as a "lookahead" device.

Examples of declarations

\[
\text{var Data: file of Integer; A: Integer;}
\]

\[
\text{var Plotfile: file of record}
\]
\[
\text{C: Color;}
\]
\[
\text{Len: Natural}
\]
\[
\text{end;}
\]

\[
\text{var Club: file of Person; P: Person;}
\]

Examples of statements with files

\[
A := \text{Data}; \text{Get(Data)}
\]

\[
\text{Read(Data,A)}
\]

\[
\text{Plotfile}.C := \text{Red};
\]
\[
\text{Plotfile}.Len := 17; \text{Put(Plotfile)}
\]

\[
\text{Club} := P; \text{Put(Club)}
\]

\[
\text{Write(Club,P)}
\]

Files may be local to a program (or local to a procedure), or they may already exist outside the program. The latter are called external files. External files are passed as parameters in the program heading (see Chapter 3) into the program.

The next two programs illustrate the use of files. Program 9.1 reprocesses a file of real numbers representing measurements produced by an instrument or another program. Program 9.2 operates on two files
representing sequences of persons ordered by last name.

\[ F_1, F_2, \ldots, F_m \quad \text{and} \quad G_1, G_2, \ldots, G_n \]

such that \( F(I+1) \geq F(I) \) and \( G(J+1) \geq G(J) \), for all \( I, J \) and merges them into one ordered file \( H \) such that

\[ H(K+1) \geq H(K) \quad \text{for} \quad K = 1, 2, \ldots, (M+N-1). \]

program Normalize(DataIn, DataOut);

{ Program 9.1 - Normalize a file of measurements 
generated as real numbers from an 
instrument or another program. }

type
  Measurements = file of Real;
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
var
  DataIn, DataOut: Measurements;
  Sum, Mean,
  SumOfSquares, StandardDeviation: Real;
  N: Natural;
begin
  Reset(DataIn); N := 0;
  Sum := 0.0; SumOfSquares := 0.0;
  while not eof(DataIn) do
  begin N := N + 1;
    Sum := Sum + DataIn;
    SumOfSquares := SumOfSquares + Sqr(DataIn);
    Get(DataIn)
  end;
  Mean := Sum / N;
  StandardDeviation := Sqrt( (SumOfSquares / N) - Sqr(Mean) )
  Reset(DataIn); Rewrite(DataOut);
  while not Eof(DataIn) do
  begin
    DataOut := (DataIn - Mean) / StandardDeviation;
    Put(DataOut); Get(DataIn)
  end
end { Normalize }. 
program MergeFiles(F,G,H);

{ Program 9.2 - Merge files F and G sorted by last name into H. }

type
Natural = 0..MaxInt;
String15 = packed array [1..15] of Char;
Person = record
    Name: record
        First, Last: String15;
    end;
    Height: Natural { centimeters };
end;

var
    F, G, H: file of Person;
    EndFG: Boolean;

begin
    Reset(F); Reset(G); Rewrite(H);
    EndFG := Eof(F) or Eof(G);
    while not EndFG do
    begin
        if Fi.Name.Last < Gi.Name.Last then
            begin Hi:= Fi; Get(F); EndFG:= Eof(F)
        end
        else
            begin Hi:= Gi; Get(G); EndFG:= Eof(G)
        end;
        Put(H)
    end;
    while not Eof(G) do
    begin
        Write(H, Gi); Get(G)
    end;
    while not Eof(F) do
    begin
        Write(H, Fi); Get(F)
    end
end.
9.B. Textfiles

Textfiles are files that consist of a sequence of characters that is subdivided into variable–length lines. The predefined type Text is used to declare textfiles.

We may consider the type Text as being defined over the base type Char extended by a (hypothetical) line terminator or end–of–line marker. Therefore type Text is not equivalent to (Packed) file of Char. This end–of–line marker can be both recognized and generated by the following special textfile procedures.

Writeln(F) terminates the current line of the textfile F.

Readln(F) skips to the beginning of the next line of the textfile F (F↑ becomes the first character of the next line).

Eoln(F) a Boolean function indicating whether the end of the current line in the textfile F has been reached. (If true, F↑ corresponds to the position of a line separator, but F↑ is a blank.)

If F is a textfile and Ch a character variable,

Write(F, Ch) is an abbreviation for

\[
begin 
F\uparrow := Ch; \quad F.t(F)
end
\]

Read(F, Ch) assigns the character at the current position of file F or the value of F↑ to Ch, followed by a Get(F). The choice is implementation–dependent.

Input and Output are the names of two standard textfile variables used as program parameters for legible reading and writing of text. Chapter 12 describes them in detail together with extended forms of the procedures Read, Write, Readln, and Writeln.

The following program scheme use the above conventions to demonstrate some typical operation performed on textfiles.

1. Writing a textfile. Assume that \( (\cdot) \) computes a (next) character and assigns it to parameter C. If the current line is to be terminated, a Boolean variable B1 is set to true; and if the text is to be terminated, B2 is set to true.
Rewrite(Y);
repeat
  repeat P(C); Write(Y,C) until B1;
  Writeln(Y)
until B2

2. Reading a textfile x. Assume that Q(C) denotes the processing of a (next) character C. R denotes an action to be executed upon encountering the end of a line.

Reset(X);
while not eof(X) do begin
  while not eoln(X) do begin Read(X,C); Q(C) end;
  R; Readln(X)
end

3. Copying a textfile x to a textfile y while preserving the line structure of x.

Reset(X); Rewrite(Y);
While not eof(X) do begin { copy a line }
  while not eoln(X) do begin Read(X,C); Write(Y,C) end;
  Readln(X); Writeln(Y)
end

A note on implementation: A straightforward method of representing the end–of–line marker is by using control characters. For instance, in the ASCII character set the two characters, cr (carriage return) and lf (line feed), conventionally are used to mark the end of a line. However, some computer systems use a character set devoid of such control characters; this implies that other methods for indicating the end of a line must be employed.
So far we have talked about types that provide for the declaration of statically allocated variables. A *static variable* is one that is declared in a program and subsequently denoted by its identifier. It is called static, because it exists (i.e., memory is allocated for it) during the entire execution of the block (program, procedure, or function) to which it is local. A variable may, on the other hand, be created and destroyed *dynamically* during the execution of a block (without any correlation to the static structure of the program). Such a variable is consequently called a *dynamic variable* or an *identified variable*.

10.A. Pointer Variables and Identified (Dynamic) Variables

Identified (dynamic) variables do not occur in an explicit variable declaration and cannot be accessed directly by identifiers. Instead they are created and destroyed by using the predeclared procedures `New` and `Dispose`, and they are identified by pointer values (which might be implemented as nothing more than the storage addresses of the newly allocated variables). Pointer values must be assigned to previously existing pointer variables having the appropriate pointer type.
The description of a pointer type $P$ specifies a domain type $T$:

$$\text{type } P = \uparrow T;$$

The set of pointer values of type $P$ consists of an unbounded number of identifying values, each of which identifies a variable of type $T$, together with the special value nil that does not identify any variable.

An identified (dynamic) variable is accessed by the pointer value that identifies it; in particular, if $\text{Ptr}$ is declared as:

$$\text{var } \text{Ptr: } P;$$

and an identifying value has been assigned to $\text{Ptr}$, then the construct $\text{Ptr} \uparrow$ is used to denote the identified variable.

$\text{Ptr} \uparrow$ is an error if $\text{Ptr}$ is nil or undefined.

Use $\text{New(Ptr)}$ to create or allocate an identified variable of type $T$ and to assign its identifying value to $\text{Ptr}$. Use $\text{Dispose(}\text{Ptr)}$ to destroy or deallocate the variable identified by the value of $\text{Ptr}$; $\text{Ptr}$ becomes undefined after $\text{Dispose}$.

Pointers are a simple tool for the construction of complicated and flexible (and even recursive) data structures. If the type $T$ is a record structure that contains one or more fields of type $P$, then structures equivalent to arbitrary finite graphs may be built, where the identified variables represent the nodes, and the pointers are the edges.

Program 10.1 illustrates the use of pointers to maintain a waiting list of clients. (Procedures are discussed in the next chapter.)
program WaitingList(Input, Output);
{ Program 10.1 - Simulate a client waiting list; serve the first 3. }

const
    NameLength = 15;

type
    NameIndex = 1..NameLength;
    NameString = packed array [NameIndex] of Char;
    Natural = 0..MaxInt;
    ClientPointer = Client;
    Client = record
        Name: NameString;
        Nxt: ClientPointer
    end;

var
    Head, Tail: ClientPointer;
    Name: packed array [NameIndex] of Char;

procedure ReadName;
var c: NameIndex;
begin
    for c := 1 to NameLength do
        if Eoln(Input) then Name[c] := ' '
        else begin
            Read(Input, Name[c]);
            Write(Output, Name[c]);
        end;
    Readln(Input); Writeln(Output)
end { ReadName };

procedure AddClientToList;
var NewClient: ClientPointer;
begin
    New(NewClient);
    if Head = nil then Head := NewClient
    else Tail^.Nxt := NewClient;
    NewClient^.Name := Name; NewClient^.Nxt := nil;
    Tail := NewClient
end { AddClientToList };
while (HowMany > 0) and (Head <> nil) do begin
  ClientToServe := Head;  Head := Head↑.Nxt;
  Writeln(ClientToServe↑.Name);
  Dispose(ClientToServe);
  HowMany := HowMany - 1
end
end { ServeClients };

begin { WaitingList }
  Head := nil;
  while not Eof(Input) do begin
    ReadName;  AddClientToList
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  ServeClients(3)
end { WaitingList }.

*Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):*

Hikita
Balasubramanyam
Nagel
Lecarme
Bello
Pokrovsky
Barron
Yuen
Sale
Price

Hikita
Balasubramanyam
Nagel

As another example, consider the construction of a “data base” for a
group of people. Assume the persons are represented by records as
defined in Chapter 7. We may then form a chain or linked list of such
records by adding a field of a pointer type and use the list for searching
and insertion operations:

```
type Link = ↑Person;
...
Person = record
  ...
    Next: Link;
  end;
```
A linked list of \( n \) persons can be represented as in Figure 10.c. Each box represents one person.

![Figure 10.c Linked List](image)

A variable of type \( \text{Link} \), called \( \text{First} \), points to the first person of the list. The Next field of the last person in the list is \( \text{nil} \). Note in passing that

\[
\text{First} \rightarrow \text{Next} \rightarrow \text{Next}
\]

points to the third person in the list. If we assume that, for example, we can read integer data representing the heights of people, then the following code could have been used to construct the above chain.

```pascal
var First, P: Link; H, I: Integer;

First := nil;
for I := 1 to N do
  begin Read(H); New(I);
    P^.Next := First;
    P^.Height := H; InitializeOtherFields(P);
    First := P
  end
```

Note that the list grows backwards. For purposes of access, we will introduce another variable, say \( P_t \), of type \( \text{Link} \) and allow it to move freely through the list. To demonstrate selection, we assume there is a Person with Height equal to 175 and access this Person. The strategy is to advance \( P_t \) via Link until the desired person is located:

\[
P_t := \text{First};
\text{while } P_t \rightarrow \text{Height} <> 175 \text{ do } P_t := P_t \rightarrow \text{Next}
\]

In words this says, "Let \( P_t \) point to the first person. While the height of the person pointed to (identified) by \( P_t \) is not 175, assign to \( P_t \) the pointer value stored in the Next field (also a pointer variable) of the record that \( P_t \) currently identifies."
This simple search statement works only if one is sure that there is at least one person with Height equal to 175 on the list. But is this realistic? A check for failing to find 175 before reaching the end of the list is mandatory unless you can guarantee it. We might first try the following solution:

\[
\begin{align*}
Pt &:= \text{First;} \\
\text{while (} Pt \text{ <> nil) and (} Pt^\uparrow.\text{Height} \text{ <> 175) do} \\
Pt &:= Pt^\uparrow.\text{Next}
\end{align*}
\]

But recall Section 4.A. If \(Pt = \text{nil}\), the variable \(Pt^\uparrow\), referenced in the second factor of the termination condition, does not exist at all, and referencing it is an error. The following are two possible solutions which treat this situation correctly:

1. \[
\begin{align*}
Pt &:= \text{First;} \\
B &:= \text{true} \\
\text{while (} Pt \text{ <> nil) and } B \text{ do} \\
\text{if } Pt^\uparrow.\text{Height} = 175 \text{ then } B &:= \text{false} \\
\text{else } Pt &:= Pt^\uparrow.\text{Next}
\end{align*}
\]

2. \[
\begin{align*}
Pt &:= \text{First;} \\
\text{while } Pt \text{ <> nil do} \\
\text{begin} \text{if } Pt^\uparrow.\text{Height} = 175 \text{ then goto 13;} \\
Pt &:= Pt^\uparrow.\text{Next} \\
\text{end;}
\end{align*}
\]

13:

10.B. **New and Dispose**

To pose another problem, say we wish to add the sample person to the data base. First a variable must be allocated, and its identifying value obtained by means of the predeclared procedure \texttt{New}.

\texttt{New(P)} a procedure that allocates a new identified (dynamic) variable \(P^\uparrow\) having as its type the domain type of \(P\), creates a new identifying pointer value having the type of \(P\), and assigns it to \(P\). If \(P^\uparrow\) is a variant record, \texttt{New(P)} allocates enough space to accommodate all variants.

\texttt{New(P, C1, ..., Cn)} allocates a new identified (dynamic) variable \(P^\uparrow\) having the variant record type of \(P\) with tag field values \(C1, ..., Cn\) for \(n\) nested variant parts, creates a new identifying pointer value having the type of \(P\), and assigns it to \(P\).
Warning: if a record variable \( \text{Person} \) is created by the second form of \texttt{New}, then this variable must not change its variant during program execution. Assignment to the entire variable is an error; however one can assign to the components of \( \text{Person} \).

The first step in programming a solution to our problem posed above, is to introduce a pointer variable. Let it be called \texttt{NewP}. Then the statement

\[
\text{New}(\texttt{NewP})
\]

allocates a new variable of type \texttt{Person}.

Next the new variable, referenced by the pointer \texttt{NewP}, is to be inserted after the person referenced by \( \texttt{Pt} \). See Figure 10.d.

![Figure 10.d](image)

**Figure 10.d**  Linked List Before Insertion

Insertion is a simple matter of changing the pointers:

\[
\begin{align*}
\texttt{NewP}.\text{Next} & := \texttt{Pt}.\text{Next}; \\
\texttt{Pt}.\text{Next} & := \texttt{NewP}
\end{align*}
\]

Figure 10.e illustrates the result.

![Figure 10.e](image)

**Figure 10.e**  Linked List After Insertion
Deletion of the person following the auxiliary pointer \( Pt \) is accomplished in the single instruction:

\[
Pt^{\uparrow}.Next := Pt^{\uparrow}.Next^{\uparrow}.Next
\]

It is often practical to process a list using two pointers — a lookahead and a trailer, one following the other. In the case of deletion, it is then likely that one pointer — say \( P^{\dagger} \) — precedes the member to be deleted, and \( P_2 \) points to that member. Deletion can then be expressed in the single instruction:

\[
P_1^{\uparrow}.Next := P_2^{\uparrow}.Next
\]

You are, however, warned that deletions in this manner will sometimes result in the loss of usable (free) storage. A possible remedy is to maintain an explicit list of “deleted” members, pointed to by a variable \( Free \). New variables will then be taken from this list (if it is not empty) instead of using the procedure \( \text{New} \). A deletion of a list member now becomes a transfer of that member from the list to the free–member list.

\[
P_1^{\uparrow}.Next := P_2^{\uparrow}.Next;
P_2^{\uparrow}.Next := Free;
Free := P_2
\]

Finally, by using the predeclared procedure \( \text{Dispose} \), the management of deleted members can be left to the Pascal implementation.

\( \text{Dispose}(Q) \) deallocates the identified variable \( Q^{\uparrow} \) and destroys the identifying value \( Q \). It is an error if \( Q \) is \text{nil} or undefined. The value \( Q \) must have been created with the first form of \( \text{New} \).

\( \text{Dispose}(Q, K_1, \ldots, K_n) \) deallocates the identified variant record variable \( Q^{\uparrow} \) with active variants selected by \( K_1, \ldots, K_n \) and destroys the identifying value \( Q \). It is an error if \( Q \) is \text{nil} or undefined. The value \( Q \) must have been created with the second form of \( \text{New} \) and \( K_1, \ldots, K_n \) must select the same variants selected when \( Q \) was created.

Chapter 11 presents Programs 11.6 and 11.7 illustrating the traversal of tree structures which are built using pointer types.
CHAPTER 11

Procedures and Functions

As we grow in the art of computer programming, we construct programs in a sequence of refinement steps. At each step we break our task into a number of subtasks, thereby defining a number of partial programs. To camouflage this structure is undesirable. The concepts of the procedure and function allow you to display the subtasks as explicit subprograms.

Figure 11.a  Syntax diagram for ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart

Figure 11.b  Syntax diagram for ProcedureOrFunctionHeading
11.A. Procedures

Throughout the example programs in this User Manual, the predeclared procedures Read, Readln, Write, and Writeln are used. This section describes how to build your own “programmer-declared” procedures; in fact, Programs 8.2 and 10.1 use them.

The *procedure declaration* serves to define a program part and to associate it with an identifier, so that it can be activated by a *procedure statement*. The declaration has the same form as a program, except it is introduced by a *procedure heading* instead of a program heading.

```
procedure }----./
  Identifier
  FormalParameterList

Figure 11.c  Syntax diagram for ProcedureHeading
```

Recall Program 6.1 that found the minimum and maximum values in a list of integers. As an extension, say that \( n \) increments are added to \( A[1]...A[n] \), then \( \text{Min} \) and \( \text{Max} \) are again computed. The resulting program, which employs a procedure to determine \( \text{Min} \) and \( \text{Max} \), follows.

```
program MinMax2(Input,Output);

{ Program 11.1 - Extend Program 6.1 by introducing a procedure. }
const
  MaxSize = 20;
type
  ListSize = 1..MaxSize;
var
  Increment: Integer;
  Item: ListSize;
  A: array [ListSize] of Integer;
procedure MinMax;
  var
    Item: ListSize;
    Min, Max, First, Second: Integer;
```
begin
  Min := A[1]; Max := Min; Item := 2;
  while Item < MaxSize do begin
    First := A[Item]; Second := A[Item+1];
    if First > Second then begin
      if First > Max then Max := First;
      if Second < Min then Min := Second
    end else begin
      if Second > Max then Max := Second;
      if First < Min then Min := First
    end;
    Item := Item + 2
  end;
  if Item = MaxSize then
  else
  Writeln(Output, Max, Min);
end {MinMax};

begin
  for Item := 1 to MaxSize do begin
    Read(Input, A[Item]); Write(Output, A[Item] :4)
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
MinMax;
for Item := 1 to MaxSize do begin
  Read(Input, Increment);
  Write(Output, A[Item] :4)
end;
Writeln(Output);
MinMax
end.

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

-1 -3 4 7 8 54 2 -5 3 9 9 9 9 -6
45 79 79 3 1 1 5
79 -6
44 40 7 15 9 88 1 -4 7 43 12 17 -7
48 59 39 9 7 7 12
88 -7
Although simple, this program illustrates many points:

1. The simplest form of the procedure heading, namely:
   ```
   procedure Identifier;
   ```

2. Blocks. A procedure is a block with a name. The program block is MinMax2 and the procedure block is MinMax. In this case the part of the Program 6.1 used only to find the minimum and maximum values is isolated and given the name MinMax. Just like the program block, the block constituting a procedure has a declaration part which introduces the objects local to the procedure.

3. Local Variables. Local to procedure MinMax are the variables Item, First, Second, Min and Max; assignments to these variables have no effect on the program outside the scope of MinMax. Local variables are undefined at the beginning of the statement part each time the procedure is activated.

4. Global Variables. A, Item and Increment are global variables declared in the main program. They may be referenced throughout the program (e.g., the first assignment in MinMax is Min := A[1]).

5. Scope. Note that Item is the name for both a global and a local variable. These are not the same variable! A procedure may refer to any variable non–local to it, or it may choose to redefine the name. If a variable name is redeclared, the new name/type association is then valid for the scope of the defining procedure, and the non–local variable of that name (unless passed as a parameter) is no longer available within the procedure scope. Assignment to the local variable Item (e.g., Item := Item + 2) has no effect upon the global variable Item, and because within MinMax the local Item has precedence, the global Item is effectively inaccessible.

It is a good programming practice to declare every identifier which is not referred to outside the procedure, as strictly local to that procedure. Not only is this good documentation, but it also provides added security. For example, Item could have been left as a global variable; but then a later extension to the program which activated procedure
MinMax within a loop controlled by Item would cause incorrect computation.

6. The Procedure Statement. In this example, the statement MinMax in the main program activates the procedure.

![Syntax diagram for ProcedureStatement](image)

Ex 考 the Program 11.1 in more detail, note that MinMax is activated twice. By formulating the program part as a procedure — i.e., by not explicitly writing this program part twice — you can conserve not only your typing time, but also the memory (space) used by the program. The static code is stored only once, and the space for local variables is dynamically activated only during the execution of the procedure (created at the beginning and destroyed at the end).

You should not hesitate, however, from formulating an action as a procedure — even when called only once — if doing so enhances the readability of a program. In general, shorter blocks are easier to understand than long ones. Defining development steps as procedures makes a more communicable and verifiable program.

11.A.1 Parameter lists

Often necessary with the decomposition of a problem into subprograms is the introduction of new variables to represent the arguments and the results of the subprograms. The purpose of such variables should be clear from the program text.

Program 11.2 extends the above example to compute the minimum and maximum value of an array in a more general sense. This illustrates several further points about procedures.
1. The second form of the *procedure heading*, i.e., one with a parameter list.

2. *Formal Parameters*. The *parameter list* gives the name of each formal parameter followed by its type. `MinMax` has `L, Min,` and `Max` as formal parameters. The formal parameter list opens a new scope for the parameters.

3. *Actual Parameters*. Note a correspondence between the procedure heading and the procedure statement. The latter contains a list of *actual parameters*, which are substituted for the corresponding formal parameters that are defined in the

```pascal
program MinMax3(Input, Output);
{ Program 11.2 - Modify Program 11.1 for two lists. }
const
  MaxSize = 20;
type
  ListSize = 1..MaxSize;
  List = array[ListSize] of Integer;
var
  Item: ListSize;
  A, B: List;
  MinA, MinB, MaxA, MaxB: Integer;
procedure MinMax(var L: List; var Min, Max: Integer);
var
  Item: ListSize;
  First, Second: Integer;
begin
  Min := L[1]; Max := Min; Item := 2;
  while Item < MaxSize do begin
    First := L[Item]; Second := L[Item + 1];
    if First > Second then begin
      if First > Max then Max := First;
      if Second < Min then Min := Second
    end else begin
      if Second > Max then Max := Second;
      if First < Min then Min := First
    end;
    Item := Item + 2
  end;
  if Item = MaxSize then
    if L[MaxSize] > Max then Max := L[MaxSize]
  else
```
if L[MaxSize] < Mi: then Min := L[MaxSize]
end { MinMax }

procedure ReadWrite(var : List);
begin
  for Item := 1 to MaxSize do begin
    Read(Input, L[item]);
    Write(Output, L[Item] : 4)
  end;
  Writeln(Output)
end { ReadWrite }

begin { main program }
  ReadWrite(A);
  MinMax(A, MinA, MaxA);
  Writeln(Output, MinA, MaxA, MaxA - MinA);
  ReadWrite(B);
  MinMax(B, MinB, MaxB);
  Writeln(Output, MinB, MaxB, MaxB - MinB);
  Writeln(Output);
  Writeln(Output);
  Writeln(Output, abs(MinA - MinB), abs(MaxA - MaxB));
  Writeln(Output);
  for Item := 1 to MaxSize do begin
    Write(Output, A[Item] : 1)
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  MinMax(A, MinA, MaxA);
  Writeln(Output, MinA, MaxA, MaxA - MinA)
end .

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

\[-1 -3 4 7 8 54 2 -5 3 9 9 9 \]
\[45 79 79 3 1 1 5\]
\[-6 79 \]
\[45 43 3 8 1 34 -1 4 34 3 8 -1\]
\[3 -2 -4 6 6 6 7\]
\[-8 45 \]
\[2 34\]
\[44 40 7 15 9 88 1 -4 7 43 12 17 -7\]
\[48 77 75 9 7 7 12\]
\[-7 88 \]
\[95\]
procedure declaration. The correspondence is established by the positioning of the parameters in the lists of actual and formal parameters. Parameters provide a substitution mechanism that allows a process to be repeated with a variation of its arguments (e.g., MinMax is activated twice to scan array A and once to scan array B). There exist four kinds of parameters: value parameters, variable parameters, procedural parameters (described in Section 11.A.4), and functional parameters (described in Section 11.B.1).
4. *Variable Parameters.* Procedure `MinMax` shows the case of the *variable parameter.* The actual parameter must be a variable; the corresponding formal parameter must be preceded by the symbol `var` and becomes a synonym for this actual variable during the entire execution of the procedure. Any operation involving the formal parameter is then performed directly upon the actual parameter. Use variable parameters to represent the *results* of a procedure — as is the case for `Min` and `Max` in Program 11.2. Furthermore, if \( X_1 \ldots X_n \) are the actual variables that correspond to the formal variable parameters \( V_1 \ldots V_n \), then \( X_1 \ldots X_n \) should be *distinct* variables. All address calculations are done at the time of the procedure activation. Hence, if a variable is a component of an array, its index expression is evaluated when the procedure is activated. Note that a component of a packed structure or a tag field in a variant record must not appear as an actual variable parameter, thus avoiding implementation problems for calculating addresses.

When no symbol heads the parameter section, the parameter(s) of this section are said to be *value parameter(s).* In this case the actual parameter must be an expression (of which a variable is a simple case). The corresponding formal parameter represents a local variable in the activated procedure. As its initial value, this variable receives the current value of the corresponding actual parameter (i.e., the value of the expression at the time of the procedure activation). The procedure may then change the value of this variable through an assignment; this cannot, however, affect the value of the actual parameter. Hence, a value parameter can never represent a result of a computation. Note that file parameters or structured variables with files as components may not be specified as actual value parameters, as this would constitute an assignment.

The difference in the effects of value and variable parameters is shown in Program 11.3.

The following table summarizes the correct kinds of parameters for formal and actual parameter lists.
Procedures and Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>parameter kind</th>
<th>formal parameter</th>
<th>actual parameter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>value parameter</td>
<td>variable identifier</td>
<td>expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variable parameter</td>
<td>variable identifier</td>
<td>variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procedural parameter</td>
<td>procedure heading</td>
<td>procedure identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>functional parameter</td>
<td>function heading</td>
<td>function identifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

program Parameters(Output);

{ Program 11.3 - Illustrate value and var parameters. }

var
A, B: Integer;

procedure Addl(X: Integer; var Y: Integer);
begin
  X := X + 1;  Y := Y + 1;  Writeln(Output,X,Y)
end { Addl }; 

begin
  A := 0;  B := 0;  Addl(A,B);
  Writeln(Output,A,B)
end { Parameters }.

Produces as results:

1
1
0 1

In procedure MinMax of Program 11.2 none of the values in array L are altered; i.e., L is not a result. Consequently L could have been defined as a value parameter without affecting the end result. To understand why this was not done, it is helpful to look at the implementation.

A procedure activation allocates a new area for each value parameter; this represents the local variable. The current value of the actual parameter is “copied” into this location; exit from the procedure simply releases this storage.

If a parameter is not used to transfer a result of the procedure, a value parameter is generally preferred. The accessing may be more efficient, and you are protected against mistakenly altering the data. However in the case where a parameter is of a structured type (e.g., an
array), you should be cautious, for the copying operation is relatively expensive, and the amount of storage needed to hold the copy may be large. In the example, because each component in the array is accessed only once, it is desirable to define the parameter as a variable parameter.

We may change the dimension of the array simply by redefining MaxSize. To make the program applicable for an array of reals, we need only change the type and variable definitions; the statements are not dependent upon integer data.

11.A.2. Conformant–array parameters

Another way to pass different-sized arrays to a procedure or function is to use a conformant–array parameter as a variable or value parameter in the formal parameter list. Caution: Conformant–array parameters are an optional feature in the ISO Pascal Standard. Some implementations will not support them.

---

**Figure 11.g** Syntax diagram for *ConformantArraySchema*

---

**Figure 11.h** Syntax diagram for *IndexTypeSpecification*
Conformant arrays specify the actual bounds of each dimension of the array as bound identifiers which are a kind of read-only variable. The index type of the actual array parameter must be compatible with the type in the conformant array’s index type specification. The smallest and largest values of that index type must lie within the closed interval of the type in the index type specification. The component types must be the same, and if the component type of the conformant-array parameter is another conformant-array parameter then the component type of the actual array parameter must conform to it.

A conformant-array parameter may be packed only in its last dimension. Actual parameters to value conformant-array parameters may be variables or strings.

Program MatrixMul of Chapter 6 is rewritten as Program 11.4 to use conformant-array parameters. Program 11.7 passes different-length strings to a formal conformant-array parameter.

11.A.3 Recursive procedures

The use of a procedure identifier within the text of the procedure itself implies recursive execution of the procedure. Problems whose definition is naturally recursive, often lend themselves to recursive solutions. An example is Program 11.5.

The task is to construct a program to convert expressions into postfix form (Polish notation). This is done by constructing an individual conversion procedure for each syntactic construct (expression, term, factor). As these syntactic constructs are defined recursively, their corresponding procedures may activate themselves recursively.

Given as data are the symbolic expressions:

\[
\begin{align*}
(a+b)*(c-d) \\
\text{a+b*c-d} \\
(a + b)* c-d \\
\text{a+b*(c-d)} \\
\text{a * a * a * a} \\
\text{b+c*(d+c*a*a)*b+a}.
\end{align*}
\]
program MatrixMu12 (Input, 'dtput);
{ Program 11.4 - Rewrite program 6.3 using a
procedure with conformant-array parameters. }
const
  M = 4;  P = 3;  N = 2;
type
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
  A: array [1..M, 1..P] of Integer;
  B: array [1..P, 1..N] of Integer;
  C: array [1..M, 1..N] of Integer;

procedure ReadMatrix
  (var X: array [LoRow..HiRow: Positive;
        LoCol..HiCol: Positive] of Integer);
var
  Row, Col: Positive;
begin
  for Row := LoRow to HiRow do
    for Col := LoCol to HiCol do
      Read(Input, X[Row, Col])
end { ReadMatrix };

procedure WriteMatrix
  (var X: array [LoRow..HiRow: Positive;
        LoCol..HiCol: Positive] of Integer);
var
  Row, Col: Positive;
begin
  for Row := LoRow to HiRow do begin
    for Col := LoCol to HiCol do
      Write(Output, X[Row, Col]);
      WriteLn(Output)
  end
end { WriteMatrix };

procedure Multiply
  (var A: array [LoARow..HiARow: Positive;
                LoACol..HiACol: Positive] of Integer;
  var B: array [LoBRow..HiBRow: Positive;
                LoBCol..HiBCol: Positive] of Integer;
  var C: array [LoCRow..HiCRow: Positive;
                LoCCol..HiCCol: Positive] of Integer);
var
  Sum: Integer;
  I, J, K: Positive;
begin
  if (LoARow <> 1) or (LoACol <> 1) or
     (LoBRow <> 1) or (LoBCol <> 1) or
     (LoCRow <> 1) or (LoCCol <> 1) or
     (HiARow <> HiCRow) or (HiACol <> HiBRow) or
     (HiBCol <> HiCCol) then {error}
  else
    for I := 1 to HiCRow do begin
      for J := 1 to HiCCol do begin
        Sum := 0;
        for K := 1 to HiACol do
        C[I,J] := Sum
      end;
    end
  end { Multiply }
end.

begin
  ReadMatrix(A);
  WriteMatrix(A);
  ReadMatrix(B);
  WriteMatrix(B);
  Multiply(A,B,C);
  WriteMatrix(C)
end.

Produces as results:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
-2 & 0 & 2 \\
1 & 0 & 1 \\
-1 & 2 & -3 \\
-1 & 3 \\
-2 & 2 \\
2 & 1 \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 10 \\
6 & -4 \\
1 & 4 \\
-9 & -2 \\
\end{array}
\]
which are formed according to the EBNF below. A period terminates the input.

\[
\text{Expression} = \text{Term} \{ (\text{"+" | "-"}) \text{Term} \}.
\]
\[
\text{Term} = \text{Factor} \{ \text{"*" Factor} \}.
\]
\[
\text{Factor} = \text{Identifier} \{ ('\text{"} \text{Expression} \text{"})' \}.
\]
\[
\text{Identifier} = \text{Letter}.
\]

program PostFix(Input, Output);
{ Program 11.5 - Convert an infix expression to Polish postfix form. }
label 13 { premature end of file };
var
  Ch: Char;
procedure Find;
begin
  if Eof(Input) then goto 13;
  repeat Read(Input, Ch);
  until (Ch <> ' ') or Eof(Input)
end { Find };
procedure Expression;
var
  Op: Char;
procedure Term;
procedure Factor;
begin
  if Ch = '(' then
    begin Find; Expression; { Ch = ')' } end
  else
    Write(Output, Ch);
  Find
end { Factor };
begin { Term }
  Factor;
  while Ch = '*' do
    begin
      Factor; Write(Output, '*')
    end { Term }
end { Expression }
begin { Expression }
  Term;
  while (Ch = '+') or (Ch = '-') do
    begin
      Op := Ch; Find; Term; Write(Output, Op)
    end
end { Expression };}
begin { PostFix }
  Find;
  repeat
    Expression;
    Writeln(Output)
  until Ch = ".";
13:
end { PostFix }.

*Produces as results:*

\[
\begin{align*}
&ab+cd-\ast \\
&abc++d- \\
&ab+c*d- \\
&abcd--*+ \\
&aa*a*a* \\
&bcdca*a++*b++a+
\end{align*}
\]

A binary tree is a data structure that is naturally defined in recursive terms and processed by recursive algorithms. It consists of a finite set of nodes that is either empty or else consists of a node (the root) with two disjoint binary trees, called the left and right subtrees [Reference 6]. Recursive procedures for generating and traversing binary trees naturally reflect this mode of definition.

Program 11.6 builds a binary tree and traverses it in pre-, in-, and postorder. The tree is specified in preorder, i.e., by listing the nodes (single letters in this case) starting at the root and following first the left and then the right subtrees so that the input corresponding to Figure 11.i is:

\[
\text{abc..de..fg...hi..jkl..m..n..}
\]

where a point signifies an empty subtree.

**11.A.4. Procedural parameters**

We can rewrite Program 11.6 to illustrate passing procedures as parameters. Procedural parameters appear in the formal parameter list of procedures and functions as procedure headings. In the corresponding actual parameter list only the procedure identifier must be specified. Program 11.7 illustrates this as well as the passing of actual string values to conformant–array parameters.
program Traversal(Input, Out : :);
{ Program 11.6 - Illustra e binary tree traversal. }
type
  Ptr = ↑Node;
  Node =
    record
      Info: Char;
      LLink, RLink: Ptr
    end;
var
  Root: Ptr;
  Ch: Char;

Figure 11.1  Binary Tree Structure
procedure PreOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
  if P <> nil then begin
    Write(Output,P^.Info); PreOrder(P^.LLink);
    PreOrder(P^.RLink)
  end
end { PreOrder };

procedure InOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
  if P <> nil then begin
    InOrder(P^.LLink); Write (Output, P^.Info);
    InOrder(P^.RLink)
  end
end { InOrder };

procedure PostOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
  if P <> nil then begin
    PostOrder(P^.LLink); PostOrder(P^.RLLink);
    Write (Output,P^.Info)
  end
end { PostOrder };

procedure Enter(var P: Ptr);
begin
  Read(Input, Ch); Write(Output, Ch);
  if Ch <> '.' then begin
    New(P);
    P^.Info := Ch; Enter(P^.LLink); Enter(P^.RLLink)
  end else P := nil
end { Enter };

begin { Traversal }
  Enter(Root); Writeln(Output);
  PreOrder(Root); Writeln(Output);
  InOrder(Root); Writeln(Output);
  PostOrder(Root); Writeln(Output)
end { Traversal }.

*Produces as results:*

```
abc..de..fg...hi..jkl..m..n..
abcdefhijklmn
cbedgfaihlkmjn
cegfdbilmknjha
```
program Traversal2(Input, Output);

   { Program 11.7 - Rewrite Program 11.6 using procedural parameters. }

type
   Ptr = ↑Node;
   Node =
      record
         Info: Char;
         LLink, RLink: Ptr
      end;
   Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
   Root: Ptr;
   Ch: Char;

procedure PreOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
   if P <> nil then
      begin
         Write(Output, P↑.Info);
         PreOrder(P↑.LLink);
         PreOrder(P↑.RLink)
      end
end { PreOrder };

procedure InOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
   if P <> nil then
      begin
         InOrder(P↑.LLink);
         Write(Output, P↑.Info);
         InOrder(P↑.RLink)
      end
end { InOrder };

procedure PostOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
   if P <> nil then
      begin
         PostOrder(P↑.LLink);
         PostOrder(P↑.RLink);
         Write(Output, P↑.Info)
      end
end { PostOrder };
procedure Enter(var P: Ptr);
begin Read(Input, Ch); Write(Output, Ch);
   if Ch <> '.' then
      begin New(P);
         P^.Info := Ch; Enter(P^.LLink); Enter(P^.RLink)
      end
   else P := nil
end { Enter }

procedure WriteNodes
   (procedure TreeOperation(Start: Ptr); Root: Ptr;
      Title: packed array [M..N: Positive] of Char);
var
   C: Positive;
begin
   Writeln(Output);
   for C := M to N do Write(Output, Title[C]);
   Writeln(Output); Writeln(Output);
   TreeOperation(Root); Writeln(Output)
end { WriteNodes }

begin { Traversal2 }
   Enter(Root); Writeln(Output);
   WriteNodes(PreOrder, Root,
      'Nodes listed in preorder:');
   WriteNodes(InOrder, Root, 'Nodes listed inorder:');
   WriteNodes(PostOrder, Root,
      'Nodes listed in postorder:')</nend { Traversal2 }

*Produces as results:*

abc..de..fg...hi..jkl..m..n..

Nodes listed in preorder:

abcdefghijklmn

Nodes listed inorder:

cbedgfaihlkmjn

Nodes listed in postorder:

cegfdbilmknjha
Be careful of applying recursive techniques indiscriminately. Although appearing “clever,” they do not always produce the most computationally efficient solutions.

If a procedure $P$ activates a procedure $Q$ and $Q$ also activates $P$, and neither is declared within the other, then either $P$ or $Q$ must be declared in a forward declaration (Section 11.C).

The predeclared procedures in Appendix A are provided in every implementation of Standard Pascal. Any implementation may feature additional predeclared procedures. Since they are, as all predeclared and predefined objects, assumed to have a scope surrounding the user program, no conflict arises from a declaration redefining the same identifier within the program.

Predeclared procedures may not be passed as actual procedural parameters.

11.B. Functions

*Functions* are program parts (in the same sense as procedures) which compute a single ordinal, real, or pointer value for use in the evaluation of an expression. A function designator specifies the activation of a function and consists of the identifier denoting the function and a list of actual parameters. The parameters are variables, expressions, procedures, or functions and are substituted for the corresponding formal parameters.

The function declaration has the same form as the program, with the exception of the function heading which has the form:

![Syntax diagram for FunctionHeading](image)

As in the case of procedures, the labels in the label declaration part and all identifiers introduced in the constant definition part, the type definition part, the variable, procedure, or function declaration parts are local to the function declaration, which is called the scope of these objects. They are not known outside their scope. The values of local
variables are undefined at the beginning of the statement part.

The identifier specified in the function heading names the function. The result type is named by the type identifier and must be a simple or pointer type. Within the function declaration there must be an executed assignment (of the result type) to the function identifier to “return n” the result of the function.

Program 11.8 reformulates the exponentiation algorithm of Program 4.3 as a function declaration.

The appearance of the function identifier in an expression within the function itself implies recursive execution of the function. Appendix F illustrates a recursive function.

Function designators may occur before the function declaration if there is a forward declaration (Section 11.C).

The predeclared functions of Appendix A are assumed to be provided in every implementation of Standard Pascal. Any implementation may feature additional predeclared functions. Predeclared functions may not be passed as actual functional parameters.

program Exponentiation2(Output);

{ Program 11.8 - Reformulate Program 4.6 using a function. }

type
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
var
  Pi, PiSquared: Real;

function Power(Base: Real; Exponent: Natural): Real;
  var
    Result: Real;
  begin
    Result := 1;
    while Exponent > 0 do begin
      while not Odd(Exponent) do begin
        Exponent := Exponent div 2; Base := Sqr(Base)
      end;
      Exponent := Exponent - 1; Result := Result * Base
    end;
    Power := Result
  end { Power };
begin Pi := ArcTan(1.0) * ;
    Writeln(Output, 2.0 :11:6, 7 :3, Power(2.0, 7) :11:6);
    PiSquared := Power(Pi, 2);
    Writeln(Output, Pi :11:6, 2 :3, PiSquared :11:6);
    Writeln(Output, PiSquared :11:6, 2 :3,
             Power(PiSquared, 2) :11:6);
    Writeln(Output, Pi :11:6, 4 :3, Power(Pi, 4) :11:6)
end { Exponentiation2 }.

Produces as results:

2.000000 7 128.000000
3.141593 2 9.869605
9.869605 2 97.409100
3.141593 4 97.409100

11.B.1. Functional parameters

Functions themselves may also be passed as parameters to procedures and functions. A formal functional parameter is specified by a function heading; its corresponding actual parameter is a function identifier. Program 11.9 computes the sum of terms in a series for different functions specified at activation.

program SumSeries(Output);

{ Program 11.9 - Write a table of a series sum progression. }

const
    MaxTerms = 10;
var
    Term: 1..MaxTerms;

function Sigma( function f: (X:Real):Real;
                Lower, Upper :Integer ): Real;
    var
        Index: Integer;
        Sum: Real;
    begin
        Sum := 0.0;
        for Index := Lower to Upper do
            Sum := Sum + F(Index);
        Sigma := Sum
    end { Sigma };
function IncreasingSine(X: Real): Real;
begin
    IncreasingSine := sin(X) * X
end { IncreasingSine };

function InverseCube(X: Real): Real;
begin
    InverseCube := 1 / (Sqr(X) * X)
end InverseCube;

begin { SumSeries }
for Term := 1 to MaxTerms do
    Writeln(Term ,Sigma(IncreasingSine,1,Term),
            Sigma(InverseCube,1,Term))
end { SumSeries }.

Produces as results:

```
1 8.414710E-01 1.000000E+00
2 2.660066E+00 1.125000E+00
3 3.083426E+00 1.162037E+00
4 5.621672E-02 1.177662E+00
5-4.738405E+00 1.185662E+00
6-6.414900E+00 1.190292E+00
7-1.815995E+00 1.193207E+00
8 6.098872E+00 1.195160E+00
9 9.807942E+00 1.196532E+00
10 4.367733E+00 1.197532E+00
```

11.B.2 Side Effects

An assignment (occurring in a function declaration) to a non–local variable or to a variable parameter is called a side effect. Such occurrences often disguise the intent of the program and greatly complicate the task of verification. Hence, the use of functions producing side effects is strongly discouraged. As an example, consider Program 11.10.

program SideEffect(Output);
{ Program 11.10 - Illustrate function side effects. }
var
    A, Z: Integer;
function Sneaky(X: Integer): Integer;
begin
  Z := Z - X { side effect on Z };
  Sneaky := Sqr(X)
end { Sneaky };

begin
  Z := 10; A := Sneaky(Z);
  Writeln(Output, A, Z);
  Z := 10; A := Sneaky(10); A := A * Sneaky(Z);
  Writeln(Output, A, Z);
  Z := 10; A := Sneaky(Z); A := A * Sneaky(10);
  Writeln(Output, A, Z);
end { SideEffect }.

Produces as results:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000</td>
<td>-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.C. Forward Declarations

Procedure (function) identifiers may be used before the procedure (function) declaration if there is a forward declaration. Forward declarations are necessary to allow mutually recursive procedures and functions that are not nested. The form is as follows: (Notice that the parameter list and result type are written only in the forward declaration.)

```pascal
procedure Q(X: T); Forward;
procedure P(Y: T);
begin
  Q(A)
end;

procedure Q;
  { parameters and result types are not repeated }
begin
  P(B)
end;
```
Communication between people and computer systems was already mentioned in Chapter 9, File Types. Both learn to understand through what is termed pattern recognition. Unfortunately, the patterns recognized most easily by people (mainly those of picture and sound) are very different from those acceptable to computer systems (electrical impulses). In fact, the expense of physically transmitting data — implying a translation of patterns legible to people into those legible to computer systems and vice versa — can be as costly as the processing of the data itself. (Consequently, much research is devoted to minimizing the cost by “automating” more of the translation process.) This task of communication is called input and output handling (I/O).

People can transmit information to computer systems via input devices and media (e.g., keyboards, diskettes, pointing devices, tape cartridges, optical discs, magnetic tapes, terminals) and receive results via output devices and media (e.g., printers, magnetic tapes, diskettes, tape cartridges, optical discs, plotters, speakers, and video displays). What is common to most of these — and defined by each individual computer installation — is a set of legible characters (Chapter 2). It is over this character set that Pascal defines the standard type Text (see Chapter 9).

It is important to remember that each such input–output device enforces certain conventions as to the meaning of specific characters and patterns (strings) of characters. For example, most printers enforce some maximum line length. Also, many older line printers interpret the
first character of each line as a “carriage control” character, which is not printed but may cause some action such as a page eject or overprinting. When a textfile is used to represent a particular device, the program must obey the conventions for using that device.

Textfiles may be accessed through the predeclared file procedures Get and Put. This can, of course, be quite cumbersome as these procedures are defined for single-character manipulation. To illustrate, suppose we have a natural number stored in a variable $x$ and wish to write it on the file output. Note that the pattern of characters denoting the decimal representation of the value will be quite different from that denoting the value written as a Roman numeral (see Program 4.9). But as we are usually interested in decimal notation, it appears sensible to offer built-in, standard, transformation procedures that translate abstract numbers (from whatever computer–internal representation is used) into sequences of decimal digits and vice versa.

The two predeclared procedures Read and Write are thereby extended in several ways to facilitate the analysis and the formation of textfiles.

### 12.A. The Standard Files Input and Output

The standard textfiles Input and Output usually represent the standard I/O media of a computer system (such as the keyboard and the video display). Hence, they are the principal communication line between the computer system and its human user.

Because these two files are used very frequently, they are considered as “default values” in textfile operations when the textfile $F$ is not explicitly indicated. That is

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Write}(\text{Ch}) &= \text{Write}(\text{Output}, \text{Ch}) \\
\text{Read}(\text{Ch}) &= \text{Read}(\text{Input}, \text{Ch}) \\
\text{Writeln} &= \text{Writeln}(\text{Output}) \quad \text{(See Section 12.B.)} \\
\text{Readln} &= \text{Readln}(\text{Input}) \quad \text{(See Section 12.B.)} \\
\text{Eof} &= \text{Eof}(\text{Input}) \quad \text{(See Section 12.B.)} \\
\text{Eoln} &= \text{Eoln}(\text{Input}) \quad \text{(See Section 12.B.)} \\
\text{Page} &= \text{Page}(\text{Output}) \quad \text{(See Section 12.D.)}
\end{align*}
\]
If any of these procedures and functions are used without indication of a file parameter, the default convention specifies that the standard file Input or Output is assumed; in which case, it must be placed in the parameter list of the program heading.

*Note:* The effect of applying the predeclared procedure Reset or Rewrite to either Input or Output is implementation-defined.

Accordingly, reading and writing a textfile can be expressed as follows (assume var Ch: Char; B1, B2: Boolean; and P, Q, and R user-defined procedures).

**Writing characters on file Output:**

```
repeat
  repeat P(Ch); Write(Ch)
  until B1;
  Writeln
  until B2
```

**Reading characters from file Input:**

```
while not eof do
  begin {process a line} P;
    while not eoln do
      begin Read(Ch); Q(Ch)
        end;
      R; Readln
  end
```

The next two examples of programs show the use of the textfiles Input and Output. (Consider what changes would be necessary if only Get and Put, not Read and Write, were to be used.)

```
begin
  Lower := ['a','b','c','d','e','f','g','h','i','j','k','l','m','n','o','p','q','r','s','t','u','v','w','x','y','z'];
  Letters := Lower + Upper;
  for Ch := 'A' to 'Z' do Count[Ch] := 0;
  for Ch := 'a' to 'z' do Count[Ch] := 0;
  while not Eof do begin
    while not Eoln do begin
      Read(Ch); Write(Ch);
      if Ch in Letters then Count[Ch] := Count[Ch] + 1
    end;
    Readln; Writeln
  end;
  for Ch := 'A' to 'Z' do
    if Ch in Upper then Writeln(Ch, Count[Ch]);
  for Ch := 'a' to 'z' do
    if Ch in Lower then Writeln(Ch, Count[Ch]);
end.

_Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

A rat in Tom's house might eat Tom's ice cream!
(Arithmetic)
Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs.
The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy sleeping dog.
A  2
B  0
C  0
D  0
E  0
F  0
G  0
H  0
I  0
J  0
K  0
L  0
M  0
N  0
O  0
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following program copies Input to Output, inserting line
numbers at the beginning of each line.

program Addln(Input,Output);
{ Program 12.2 - Add line numbers to text file. }
type
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
var
  LineNum: Natural;
begin
  LineNum := 0;
  while not Eof do begin
    LineNum := LineNum + 1;
    Write(LineNum :2, ' ');
    while not Eoln do begin
      Write(Input); Get(Input)
    end;
    Write(Input); Get(Input)
  end;
  Readln; Writeln
end.

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

1 A rat in Tom’s house might eat Tom’s ice cream!
2 (Arithmetic)
3 Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs.
4 The quick brown fox jumped over a lazy sleeping dog.

When the file variable Input represents an input device (such as a
keyboard) attached to an interactive terminal, most Pascal
implementations delay evaluation of the buffer variable Input until its
value is actually required in the program. The use of Input in
expressions or implicitly as part of the action of Read, Readln, eof, or
eoln causes its evaluation. Although an implicit Reset(Input) is
done at the beginning of the program, the program will not wait for data
from the terminal until it is needed — for example, when Input is
used. If the program writes a message to prompt its user for a response
to be read in, the request for input will occur after the prompt has been
written (just as you would expect ordinarily).

The program fragment below illustrates prompting a user
interactively:
program PromptExample(Input,Output);
  var Guess: Integer;
  
  begin { Implicit Reset(Input) occurs here. }
    Writeln('Please enter an integer from 1 and 10.');</n      Read(Guess)
  
  A Pascal implementation \emph{not} employing the delayed evaluation of 
Input\uparrow will cause a request or wait for data before the message is 
written because of the implicit \texttt{Reset(Input)} which occurs as the 
program begins executing. Whether or not delayed evaluation is 
supported is implementation--defined.

\section{12.B. The Procedures \texttt{Read} and \texttt{Readln}}

The procedure \texttt{Read} was defined for textfiles in Section 9.B. \texttt{Read} is 
extended not only to accept a variable number of parameters, but also to 
accept parameters of type \texttt{Integer} (or a subrange of \texttt{Integer}) and 
\texttt{Real}.

Let $V_1, V_2, \ldots, V_n$ denote variables of type \texttt{Char}, \texttt{Integer}, (or subrange of either) or \texttt{Real}, and let $F$ denote a textfile. \texttt{Read(F,V)} is an 
error if $F$ is undefined or $F$ is not in inspection mode or $\texttt{eof}(F)$ is true.

1. \texttt{Read(Vl,\ldots,Vn)} stands for 
   \quad \texttt{Read(Input,Vl,\ldots,Vn)}

2. \texttt{Read(F,Vl,\ldots,Vn)} stands for 
   \quad \texttt{begin Read(F,Vl);\ldots;Read(F,Vn) end}

3. \texttt{Readln(Vl,\ldots,Vn)} stands for 
   \quad \texttt{Readln(Input,Vl,\ldots,Vn)}

4. \texttt{Readln(F,Vl,\ldots,Vn)} stands for 
   \quad \texttt{begin Read(F,Vl);\ldots;Read(F,Vn); Readln(F) end}

The effect for \texttt{Readln} is that after $V_n$ is read (from $F$), the 
remainder of the current line is skipped. (However, the values of $V_1\ldots V_n$ may stretch over several lines.)
5. If Ch is a variable of type Char or subrange of Char, then Read(F, Ch) assigns the character at the current position of file F or the value of F[↑] to Ch, followed by a Get(F), the choice being implementation-dependent.

6. If a parameter v is of type Integer or a subrange of Integer then Read accepts a sequence of characters forming a signed integer with possible leading blanks. The integer value denoted by this sequence is then assigned to v.

7. If a parameter v is of type Real, Read accepts a sequence of characters forming a signed number with possible leading blanks. The real value denoted by this sequence is then assigned to v.

In scanning F (skipping blanks) to read numbers, Read may also skip end-of-line markers. F is left positioned to the non-digit character following the last digit constituting a number. To correctly read consecutive numbers, separate them by blanks or put them on separate lines. Read accepts the longest sequence of digits, and if two numbers are not separated, Read cannot distinguish them as two numbers (and neither can people!)

Examples:

Read and process a sequence of numbers where the last value is immediately followed by an asterisk. Assume F to be a textfile, x and Ch to be variables of types Integer (or Real) and Char respectively.

```pascal
Reset(F);
repeat
  Read(F, X, Ch);
  P(X)
until Ch = '*'
```

Perhaps a more common situation is when there is no way of knowing how many data items are to be read, and there is no special symbol that terminates the list. Two convenient schemata are shown below. They make use of procedure SkipBlanks:

```pascal
procedure SkipBlanks(var F: Text);
var Done: Boolean;
begin
  Done := False;
```
repeat
  if eof(F) then Done := True
  else
    if F\r=' ' then Get(F)
    else Done := True
  until Done
end

The first schema processes single numbers:

Reset(F);
while not eof(F) do
  begin
    Read(F,X); SkipBlanks(F);
    P(X);
  end

The second schema processes n–tuples of numbers:

Reset(F);
while not eof(F) do
  begin
    Read(F,X1,...,Xn); SkipBlanks(F)
    P(X1,...,Xn);
  end

For the above schema to function properly, the total number of single numbers must be a multiple of n.

12.C. The Procedures Write and Writeln

The procedure Write was defined for textfiles in Section 9.B. Write is extended to accept a variable number of parameters whose types are compatible with Integer, Real, Boolean, or string types.

The procedure Write appends character strings (one or more characters) to a textfile. Let P1,P2, ... ,Pn be parameters of the form defined in the syntax diagram for WriteParameterList (Figure 12.a), and let F be a textfile. Then Write(F,P) is an error if F is undefined or F is not in generation mode or if eof(F) is not true.

1. Write(P1,...,Pn) stands for
   Write(Output,P1,...,Pn)
2. \textit{Write}(F, P_1, \ldots, P_n) \quad \text{stands for}\quad \text{begin Write}(F, P_1; \ldots; \text{Write}(F, P_n) \text{ end}

3. \textit{Writeln}(P_1, \ldots, P_n) \quad \text{stands for}\quad \text{Writeln(Output, P_1; \ldots; P_n)}

4. \textit{Writeln}(F, P_1, \ldots, P_n) \quad \text{stands for}\quad \text{begin Write}(F, P_1; \ldots; \text{Write}(F, P_n); \text{ Writeln}(F) \text{ end}

\text{Writeln} \; \text{has the effect of writing} \; P_1, \ldots, P_n \; \text{and then terminating the current line of the textfile} \; F.

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{figure12a.png}
\caption{Syntax diagram for WriteParameterList}
\end{figure}

5. Every parameter \( P_i \) must be of one of the forms:
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{e} \\
\text{e: w} \\
\text{e: w: f}
\end{align*}
\]
where \( e, w, \text{ and } f \) are expressions. \( e \) is the value to be written whose type is \textit{Char}, \textit{Integer}, \textit{any string}, \textit{Boolean}, or \textit{Real}. \( w \) — called the minimum \textit{field width} — is an optional control. \( w \) must be a positive integer expression and indicates the number of characters to be written. In general, \( e \) is written with \( w \) characters (with preceding blanks if necessary). If no field width is specified, a default value is assumed according to the type of \( e \). \( f \) — called the \textit{fraction length} — is an optional control and is applicable only when \( e \) is of type \textit{Real}. It must be a positive integer expression.
6. If \( e \) has type Char, the default value of \( w \) is 1. Therefore \( \text{Write}(F,C) \) stands for begin \( f := C; \text{Put}(F) \) end.

7. If \( e \) has type Integer, the default value of \( w \) is implementation defined. If \( w \) is less than the number of characters needed to write the integer, the entire representation of the integer (including a ‘−’ if \( e \) is negative) is written anyway!

8. If \( e \) has a string type, the default value of \( w \) is the length of the string. If \( w \) is less than this length, then only the first \( w \) characters of \( e \) are written.

9. If \( e \) has type Boolean, the default value of \( w \) is implementation defined. One of the strings ‘true’ or ‘false’ is written according to 8. above depending on the value of \( w \). Whether upper-case or lower-case (or even mixed-case) letters are written to represent the values true or false is implementation defined.

10. If \( e \) has type Real, the default value of \( w \) is implementation-defined. If \( w \) is less than the number of characters needed to write the real number, more space is taken (including room for a ‘−’ if \( e \) is negative). If \( f \) (the fraction length) is specified, the value of \( e \) will be written in fixed-point notation. Otherwise the value is written in decimal floating-point form using exponent notation.

   The general form for fixed-point notation is the sequence of characters: an optional minus sign (if the number is negative), a digit sequence representing the integer part, a period (decimal point), and a digit sequence representing the fraction part. The length of the fraction part is specified by \( f \).

   The general form for floating-point form is the sequence of \( w \) characters: a blank or minus sign, one digit, a period (decimal point), a digit sequence, the letter \( E \) (or \( e \)), a plus sign or minus sign, and a digit sequence having an implementation-defined length representing the exponent. The length of the first digit sequence (preceding the letter \( E \)) will vary depending on the value of \( w \). No additional preceding blanks are written for decimal floating-point form.

Figure 12.b gives examples of formatted writes with each type.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Char:</th>
<th>Write('$ w)</th>
<th>Write('-1984 w)</th>
<th>Write(1984: w)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>-1984</td>
<td>1984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>-1984</td>
<td>1984</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Integer</th>
<th>Write(-1984 w)</th>
<th>Write(1984: w)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-1984</td>
<td>1984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1984</td>
<td>1984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1984</td>
<td>1984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-1984</td>
<td>1984</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>strings</th>
<th>Write('h:1lo':w)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>hel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>hell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boolean</th>
<th>Write(false:w)</th>
<th>Write(true:w)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 12.b** Formatted Write Examples
Real   | w  | f   | Write(123.789:w:f) | Write(-123.789:w:f) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.238</td>
<td>-1.238</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.23789</td>
<td>-1.23789</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.237890</td>
<td>-1.237890</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.238</td>
<td>-1.238</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.238</td>
<td>-1.238</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.238</td>
<td>-1.238</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>w</th>
<th>Write(987.6:w)</th>
<th>Write(-987.6:w)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>9.9E+02</td>
<td>-9.9E+02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>9.9E+02</td>
<td>-9.88E+02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>9.88E+02</td>
<td>-9.876E+02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>9.876E+02</td>
<td>-9.876E+02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>9.8760E+02</td>
<td>-9.8759E+02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 12.b** Continued

**Note:** In the \(\text{Write}(123.789:1:4)\) and \(\text{Write}(987.6:11)\) examples, zeroes may or may not be written because of the differing representation of fractions of real numbers on different computer systems.

\(\text{Write}(123.789:1:4)\) might appear as 123.7889 and \(\text{Write}(987.6:11)\) might appear as 9.8759E+02.
12.D. The Procedure Page

As a convenience for formatting textfiles, Pascal has a predefined \texttt{Page} procedure. \texttt{Page(F)} is intended to cause subsequent text written on \texttt{F} to appear on a new "page" (if \texttt{F} is printed or displayed, etc.).

\texttt{Page(F)} causes an implementation–defined action on the file \texttt{F}. In most implementations, \texttt{Page(F)} writes the appropriate control characters (such as an ASCII Form Feed) to cause the desired effect.

\textit{Notes:} If \texttt{Page(F)} is invoked and the last operation on \texttt{F} was not \texttt{Writeln(F)} then \texttt{Page(F)} performs an implicit \texttt{Writeln(F)} as its first action. \texttt{F} must be defined and in generation mode or else \texttt{Page(F)} is an error. The effect of reading a file \texttt{F} to which \texttt{Page(F)} has been applied is implementation–dependent.
REPORT
1. Introduction

The development of the language *Pascal* is based on two principal aims. The first is to make available a language suitable to teach programming as a systematic discipline based on certain fundamental concepts clearly and naturally reflected by the language. The second is to develop implementations of this language that are both reliable and efficient on presently available computers.

The desire for a new language for the purpose of teaching programming is due to my dissatisfaction with the presently used major languages whose features and constructs too often cannot be explained logically and convincingly and that too often defy systematic reasoning. Along with this dissatisfaction goes my conviction that the language in which students are taught to express their ideas profoundly influences their habits of thought and invention, and that the disorder governing these languages directly imposes itself onto the programming style of the students.

There is of course plenty of reason to be cautious with the introduction of yet another programming language, and the objection against teaching programming in a language which is not widely used and accepted has undoubtedly some justification, at least based on short-term commercial reasoning. However, the choice of a language for teaching based on its widespread acceptance and availability, together with the fact that the language most widely taught is therefore going to be the one most widely used, forms the safest recipe for stagnation in a subject of such profound pedagogical influence. I consider it therefore well worthwhile to make an effort to break this vicious circle.

Of course a new language should not be developed just for the sake of novelty; existing languages should be used as a basis for development wherever they meet the criteria mentioned and do not impede a systematic structure. In that sense Algol 60 was used as a basis for Pascal, since it meets the demands with respect to teaching to a much higher degree than any other standard language. Thus the principles of structuring, and in fact the form of expressions, are copied from Algol 60. It was, however, not deemed appropriate to adopt Algol 60 as a subset of Pascal; certain construction principles, particularly
those of declarations, would have been incompatible with those allowing a natural and convenient representation of the additional features of Pascal.

The main extensions relative to Algol 60 lie in the domain of data-structuring facilities, since their lack in Algol 60 was considered as the prime cause for its relatively narrow range of applicability. The introduction of record and file structures should make it possible to solve commercial–type problems with Pascal, or at least to employ it successfully to demonstrate such problems in a programming course.

2. Summary of the Language

A computer program consists of two essential parts, a description of actions which are to be performed, and a description of the data that are manipulated by these actions. Actions are described by so–called statements, and data are described by so–called declarations and definitions.

The data are represented by values of variables. Every variable occurring in a statement must be introduced by a variable declaration, which associates an identifier and a data type with that variable. The type essentially defines the set of values that may be assumed by that variable, and restricts the set of valid operations on those values. A type in Pascal may be either directly described in the variable declaration, or it may be associated with a type identifier by a type definition and then represented by name.

The simple types are the predefined type Real and the various ordinal types. Every simple type defines an ordered set of values. Each ordinal type is characterized by a one–to–one mapping from its values to an interval of the integers — the so–called ordinal numbers of those values.

The basic ordinal types are the programmer–defined enumerated types and the predefined types Boolean, Char, and Integer. An enumerated type introduces a new set of values and a distinct identifier to denote each value. The values of Char are denoted by quotations, and the values of Integer and Real are denoted by numbers; these are syntactically distinct from identifiers. The set of values of type Char
and their graphic representation vary from implementation to implementation, depending on the character set of a particular computer system.

Another ordinal type that may be defined is a subrange of any basic ordinal type (the host type) by indicating the smallest and largest values in the interval of values represented by the subrange.

The structured types are defined by describing the types of their components and by indicating a structuring method. The various structuring methods differ in the mechanism serving to access the components of a variable of the structured type. In Pascal, there are four basic structuring methods available: array structure, record structure, set structure, and file structure.

In an array structure, all components are of the same type. A component is accessed by a computable index, whose type is indicated in the array type description and which must be ordinal. It is usually an enumerated type or a subrange of Integer. Given a value of the index type, an indexed variable accesses one component of the array. Each array variable can therefore be regarded as a mapping of the index type onto the component type. The time needed for a component access does not depend on the value of the index. The array structure is therefore called a random-access structure.

In a record structure, the components (called fields) are not necessarily of the same type. In order that the type of a field be evident from the program text (without executing the program), a field is not specified by a computable value, but instead is specified by a unique identifier. These field identifiers are declared in the record type description. Again, the time needed to access any component does not depend on the field identifier, and the record is therefore also a random-access structure.

A record type may be specified as having several variants. This implies that different variables, although said to be of the same type, may assume structures that differ in a certain manner. The difference may consist of a different number and different types of components. The variant that is assumed by the current value of a record variable may be indicated by a component field which is common to all variants and is called the tag field. Usually, the part common to all variants will consist of several components, including the tag field.
A set structure defines the set of values that is the powerset of its base type, i.e., the set of all subsets of values of the base type. The base type must be an ordinal type, and will usually be an enumerated type, Char, or a subrange of Integer. Components (members) of sets are not directly accessed, but the set operations (including the membership operator) and a set–value constructor allow creation and manipulation of entire sets.

A file structure describes a sequence of components of the same type. A natural ordering of the components is defined through the sequence. At any instant, only one component is directly accessible, and it may be either inspected or generated but not both. The other components are accessed by progressing sequentially through the file. A file is generated by sequentially appending components at its end. Consequently, the file type description does not determine the number of components.

A variable declaration associates an identifier with a type, and when the block (see below) in which the declaration occurs is activated, a variable that is named by the identifier is created. Such variables that are declared in explicit declarations are sometimes called static. In contrast, variables may be generated by executable statement; such a dynamic generation yields a so-called pointer (a substitute for an explicit identifier) which subsequently serves to identify the variable. This pointer value may be assigned to variables and functions that possess its type. Each pointer type has a fixed domain type, and every variable identified by a pointer value of the pointer type possesses the domain type. In addition to such identifying values, each pointer type also has the value nil which points to no variable. Because components of structured variables may possess pointer types, and the domain type of pointer types may be structured, the use of pointers permits the representation of finite graphs in full generality.

The most fundamental statement is the assignment statement. It specifies that a value obtained by evaluating an expression be assigned to a variable (or component thereof). Expressions consist of variables, constants, array–parameter index bounds, set constructors, and operators and functions operating on the denoted quantities yielding result values. Variables, constants, and functions are either declared in
the program or are standard ("predeclared") entities. Pascal defines a
fixed set of operators, each of which can be regarded as describing a
mapping from the operand types into the result type. The set of
operators is divided into four groups.

1. *Arithmetic* operators are addition, subtraction, sign
   inversion, multiplication, division, and modulus.
2. *Boolean* operators are negation, union (or), and
   conjunction (and).
3. *Set* operators are union, intersection, and set difference.
4. *Relational* operators are equality, inequality, ordering, set
   membership, and set inclusion. The result type of
   relational operators is Boolean.

The *procedure* statement causes the execution of the designated
procedure (see below). Assignment and procedure statements are the
components, or "building blocks," of *structured* statements, which
specify sequential, selective, or repeated execution of their
components. Sequential execution of statements is specified by the
*compound* statement, conditional or selective execution by the *if*
and *case* statements, and repeated execution by the *repeat*, *while*,
and *for* statements. The if statement serves to make the execution of a
statement dependent on the value of a Boolean expression, and the case
statement allows the selection among many statements according to the value
of an ordinal expression. The for statement is used to execute the
component statement while each of a succession of ordinal values is
assigned to a so-called control variable. The repeat and while
statements are used otherwise.

In addition, Pascal provides a *goto* statement, which indicates that
execution is to continue at another place in the program; that place is
marked by a *label*, which must be declared.

Statements along with declarations of labels, constants, types,
variables, procedures, and functions are collected together into *blocks*.
The labels, constants, variables, types, procedures and functions declared in a block may be referred to only within that block, and
therefore are called *local* to the block. Their identifiers have
significance only within the program text that constitutes the block and
that is called the *scope* of these identifiers. Blocks are the basis for
declaring programs, procedures, and functions, in which a block is given a name (identifier) by which the block may be denoted. Since procedures and functions may be nested, scopes may be nested.

A procedure or function has a fixed number of parameters, each of which is denoted within the procedure or function by an identifier called the formal parameter. When a procedure or function is activated, an actual quantity has to be indicated for each parameter; the quantity can be referenced from inside the block of the procedure or function through the formal parameter. This quantity is called the actual parameter. There are four kinds of parameters: value parameters, variable parameters, procedural parameters, and functional parameters. In the first case, the actual parameter is an expression which is evaluated, and the value assigned to the formal parameter, once at the beginning of each activation of the procedure or function. The formal parameter represents a local variable. In the case of a variable parameter, the actual parameter denotes a variable and the formal parameter denotes the same variable during the entire activation of the procedure or function. In the case of procedural or functional parameters, the actual parameter is a procedure or function identifier.

A function is declared analogously to a procedure, except that the function yields a result which must possess the type that is specified in the function declaration. The result type is confined to be a simple type or a pointer type. Functions may be used as constituents in expressions. Assignments to non-local variables and other so-called side effects should be avoided within function declarations.

3. Notation and Terminology

Syntactic constructs are denoted by descriptive English words (meta-identifiers) written in italics and are defined by rules of Extended Backus–Naur Form (EBNF) [Reference 13]. Each rule defines a meta-identifier by means of an EBNF expression, which consists of one or more alternative phrases separated by vertical bars (|). A phrase consists of zero or more elements, each of which is a meta-identifier, a literal symbol enclosed in quotes (“ “), or an expression enclosed in matching braces, brackets, or parentheses.
Braces { and } indicate repetition (zero or more occurrences),
brackets [ and ] indicate optionality (zero or one occurrences), and
parentheses ( and ) indicate grouping (exactly one occurrence) of the
enclosed expression.

Within Section 4, EBNF rules describe the formation of *lexical
symbols* from characters; additional characters must not occur within a
symbol. Sections 5 through 13 use EBNF rules to define the syntax of
programs in terms of symbols; symbols may be separated by (or
preceded by) *symbol separators* as described in Section 4.

The term *error* describes a program action or state that violates the
standard. Any processor may fail to detect errors.

*Implementation–defined* means that a particular Pascal construct
may differ between various implementations. Each implementation
must specify how it implements that construct.

*Implementation–dependent* means that a particular construct varies
between implementations and that an implementation does not have to
specify how it implements that construct.

An *extension* is an additional construct not available in all
implementations that does not in itself affect or invalidate the
constructs of Standard Pascal. Implementations often support
extensions in the form of additional predefined and predeclared
constants, types, variables, procedures and functions.

A program that conforms to the standard must not depend on any
implementation–dependent constructs or on any extensions. A portable
program must, in addition, be very careful in its use of
implementation–defined constructs (e.g., character set, or range of
integer values).

## 4. Symbols and Symbol Separators

A program is represented as a sequence of symbols arranged according
to the rules of Pascal syntax. Adjacent symbols often are separated by
symbol separators for purposes of readability. Symbols are categorized
as the special symbols, identifiers, directives, numbers, labels, and
character strings. Symbol separators are spaces, comments, and the
ends of lines of the textual program representation.
SpecialSymbol = “+” | “-” | “*” | “/” |
“=” | “<>” | “<” | “<=” | “>” | “>=” |
“(” | “)” | “[” | “]” | “::=” | “..” | “.” |
“:” | “;” | “↑” | WordSymbol.

WordSymbol = “div” | “mod” | “nil” | “in” | “or” | “and” |
“not” | “if” | “then” | “else” | “case” | “of” |
“repeat” | “until” | “while” | “do” | “for” |
“to” | “goto” | “downto” | “begin” | “end” |
“with” | “const” | “var” | “type” | “array” |
“record” | “set” | “file” | “function” |
“procedure” | “label” | “packed” | “program”.

The following alternative representations are standard:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Alternative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>↑</td>
<td>^ or @</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{</td>
<td>(</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>}</td>
<td>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many of the symbols are constructed from letters and digits. Except within a character string, a lower–case letter is equivalent to the corresponding upper–case letter.

Letter = “a” | “b” | “c” | “d” | “e” | “f” | “g” | “h” | “i” |
“j” | “k” | “l” | “m” | “n” | “o” | “p” | “q” | “r” |
“s” | “t” | “u” | “v” | “w” | “x” | “y” | “z”.

Digit = “0” | “1” | “2” | “3” | “4” | “5” | “6” | “7” | “8” | “9”.

Identifiers serve to denote constants, types, variables, procedures, functions, fields, and bounds. Directives are used in procedure and function declarations.

Identifier = Letter { Letter | Digit }.

Directive = Letter { Letter | Digit }.

The spelling of a word symbol, identifier, or directive is the entire sequence of specific letters and digits that it contains. No identifier or directive may have the same spelling as a word symbol.
Examples of identifiers (six distinct spellings):

```
FirstPlace          ord          ProcedureOrFunctionDeclaration
Elizabeth          John          ProcedureOrFunctionHeading
```

A specific identifier spelling is introduced by a declaration or definition to have a specific meaning, and that identifier spelling cannot have any other meaning within a region of the program text that is called the scope of that declaration or definition (see Section 10).

Numbers are expressed using the usual decimal notation. Unsigned integers and unsigned reals are, respectively, constants of the predefined types Integer and Real (see Section 6.1.2). The letter “e” preceding the scale factor in an unsigned real means “times 10 to the power.” The maximum value that an UnsignedInteger may represent is the implementation–defined value of the predefined constant Maxint.

```
UnsignedNumber = UnsignedInteger \ UnsignedReal .
UnsignedInteger = DigitSequence .
UnsignedReal = DigitSequence " e " DigitSequence [ " e " ScaleFactor ]
   \ DigitSequence " e " ScaleFactor .
ScaleFactor = [ Sign ] DigitSequence .
Sign = "+" | "-" .
DigitSequence = Digit { Digit } .
```

Examples of unsigned integers:

```
1    100    00100
```

Examples of unsigned reals:

```
0.1  0.1e0  8.3e+8  1E2
```

The signed numbers are the form that is acceptable for numeric input from textfiles (see Section 12).

```
SignedNumber = SignedInteger \ SignedReal .
SignedInteger = [ Sign ] UnsignedInteger .
SignedReal = [ Sign ] UnsignedReal .
```

Character strings are sequences of string elements enclosed in apostrophes. A string element represents an implementation–defined value of the predefined type Char and consists either of two adjacent apostrophes or of any other implementation–defined character. Two
distinct characters occurring as string elements must denote different values of type Char. The string element consisting of two apostrophes denotes the apostrophe character.

\[
\text{CharacterString} = \text{"'" StringElement \{ StringElement \} \text{"'"}.}
\]

\[
\text{StringElement} = \text{"'" } \text{\ AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe } \text{"'"}.
\]

A character string is a constant of type Char if it has one string element; otherwise it is a constant of a string type (see Section 6.2.1) that has as many components as there are string elements.

*Note:* A character string must be written on just one line of program text.

**Examples of character strings:**

- `'A'`
- `'Pascal'`
- `'This is a character string'`

Symbol separators may be placed between any two adjacent symbols or before the first symbol of a program. At least one symbol separator must occur between two adjacent identifiers, directives, word symbols, labels, or numbers. A separator is a space, the end of a line of program text, or a comment. The meaning of a program is unaltered if a comment is replaced with a space.

\[
\text{Comment} = ( \text{"{" I } (*\text{)} } \text{[CommentElement] ( \text{"\} I "\text{)})} .
\]

A CommentElement is either an end of line or any sequence of characters not containing “]” or “(*).”

*Notes:* { ... *) and (* ... } are valid comments. The comment {(* is equivalent to the comment {()}. 

5. Constants

A constant definition introduces a constant identifier to denote the value that is specified by the constant in the definition; the constant identifier being defined must not occur in the constant part of the definition. Constant definitions are collected into constant definition parts.
152 Pascal Report

\[
\text{ConstantDefinitionPart} = \left[ \text{"const" ConstantDefinition ";"} \right. \\
\left. \{ \text{ConstantDefinition ";" } \} \right].
\]

\[
\text{ConstantDefinition} = \text{Identifier "=" Constant}.
\]

\[
\text{Constant} = [\text{Sign}] (\text{UnsignedNumber I ConstantIdentifier I CharacterString}) .
\]

\[
\text{ConstantIdentifier} = \text{Identifier}.
\]

A constant identifier that is prefixed with a sign ("+" or "-"") must denote a value of type Integer or Real. There are three standard predefined constant identifiers: Maxint denotes an implementation-defined value of type Integer; False and True denote the values of type Boolean (see Section 6.1.2).

Example of a constant definition part:

```pascal
const
N = 20;
SpeedOfLight = 2.998e+3 \text{ (meters / second)};
PoleStar = \text{'}Polaris\text{'};
epsilon = 1E-6;
```

6. Types

A type determines the set of values that variables, expressions, functions, etc., possessing that type may assume. Rules of type compatibility determine how types may be used together in expressions, assignments, etc.

A type definition introduces a type identifier to denote a type; the type identifier being defined must not occur in the type part of the definition except as the domain type of a pointer type (see Section 6.3). Type definitions are collected into type definition parts. Section 6.4 gives an example of a type definition part.

\[
\text{TypeDefinitionPart} = \left[ \text{"type" Type Definition ";"} \right. \\
\left. \{ \text{TypeDefinition ";" } \} \right].
\]

\[
\text{TypeDefinition} = \text{Identifier "=" Type}.
\]

\[
\text{TypeIdentifier} = \text{Identifier}.
\]

Types are represented by the EBNF meta-identifier Type. If a type representation consists only of a type identifier, then it represents the same (existing) type that the type identifier denotes. If a type
representation does not consist only of a type identifier, then it represents an entirely new type. Types are classified according to some of their properties:

\[ \text{Type} = \text{SimpleType} \setminus \text{StructuredType} \setminus \text{PointerType}. \]

6.1. Simple Types

A simple type determines an ordered set of values, and is either the predefined Real type or an ordinal type. A real type identifier is a type identifier that denotes the Real type.

\[ \text{SimpleType} = \text{OrdinalType} \setminus \text{RealTypeldentifier}. \]

\[ \text{RealTypeldentifier} = \text{Typeldentifier}. \]

An ordinal type is distinguished (from the Real type) by the one-to-one correspondence between its values and a set of ordinal numbers. The ordinal numbers for any ordinal type constitute an interval of the integers.

The following three predeclared functions apply to any ordinal value \( x \):

\[ \text{ord}(X) \] yields the ordinal number corresponding to \( x \); the result is of type Integer.

\[ \text{succ}(X) \] yields the successor of \( x \). That is,

\[ \text{succ}(X) > X, \text{and } \text{ord}(\text{succ}(X)) = \text{ord}(X) + 1 \]

unless \( x \) is the largest value of its type, in which case \( \text{succ}(X) \) is an error.

\[ \text{pred}(X) \] yields the predecessor of \( x \). That is,

\[ \text{pred}(X) < X, \text{and } \text{ord}(\text{pred}(X)) = \text{ord}(X) - 1 \]

unless \( x \) is the smallest value of its type, in which case \( \text{pred}(X) \) is an error.

Clearly, the ordering of the values of an ordinal type is the same as the ordering of their ordinal numbers.

An ordinal type either is an enumerated type or one of the predefined types Integer, Char, or Boolean, or else is a subrange of one of these.

\[ \text{OrdinalType} = \text{EnumeratedType} \setminus \text{SubrangeType} \setminus \text{OrdinalTypeldentifier}. \]

\[ \text{OrdinalTypeldentifier} = \text{Typeldentifier}. \]

An ordinal type identifier is a type identifier that denotes an ordinal type.
6.1.1. Enumerated types. An enumerated type defines a set of entirely new values and introduces a constant identifier to denote each value.

\[
\text{EnumeratedType} = \langle \langle \text{IdentifierList} \rangle \rangle.
\]

\[
\text{IdentifierList} = \text{Identifier} \{ \text{,,} \text{Identifier} \}.
\]

The first identifier denotes the smallest value, which has the ordinal number zero. Every other identifier in the list denotes the successor of the value denoted by the preceding identifier. That is, the constant identifiers are listed in increasing order.

Examples of enumerated types:

- (Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue)
- (Club, Diamond, Heart, Spade)
- (Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday)

6.1.2. Predefined simple types. The following predefined type identifiers are standard in Pascal.

- **Real** determines an implementation-defined subset of the real numbers.
- **Integer** includes the set of integers having an absolute value less than or equal to the implementation-defined value of the predefined constant identifier `Maxint`. For any integer \( I \), \( \text{ord}(I) = I \).
- **Boolean** determines the set of truth values denoted by the predefined constant identifiers `False` and `True`. Note that `false < true` and \( \text{ord}(\text{false}) = 0 \).
- **Char** determines an implementation-defined set of characters having implementation-defined ordinal numbers, such that:
  
  (a) the digits `'0', '1', ..., '9'` are numerically ordered and consecutive (e.g., \( \text{succ}'0' = '1' \));
  
  (b) if the lower-case letters `'a', 'b', ..., 'z'` are present, they are alphabetically ordered (but not necessarily consecutive!); and
  
  (c) if the upper-case letters `'A', 'B', ..., 'Z'` are present, they are alphabetically ordered (but not necessarily consecutive!).
6.1.3. **Subrange types.** The set of values determined by a subrange type is a subset of the values of another ordinal type that is called the *host type* of the subrange type. The subrange type specifies the smallest and the largest value, and includes every value between them.

\[ \text{SubrangeType} = \text{Constant} \, \ldots \, \text{Constant} \]

Both constants must possess the host type. The first constant specifies the smallest value, and must be less than or equal to the second constant which specifies the largest value.

*Examples of subrange types:*

- \[1..N\]
- \[-10 .. +10\]
- Monday..Friday

6.2 **Structured Types**

A structured type is characterized by the type(s) of its components and by its structuring method. Moreover, a structured type may contain an indication of the preferred data representation. If a structured type is prefixed with the symbol `packed`, this has no effect on the meaning of a program (with two exceptions); rather it is a hint to the compiler that storage of values of that type should be economized even at the price of some loss in efficiency of access, and even if this may expand the code necessary for expressing access to components of the structure. The two exceptions are that string types (see Section 6.2.1) are always packed, and that an actual variable parameter (see Section 11.3) must not be a component of a packed structured variable. If a component of a packed structured type also possesses a structured type, the component’s type is packed only if the symbol `packed` is explicitly given in the component’s type representation.

\[ \text{StructuredType} = \{ \text{packed} \} \text{UnpackedStructuredType} \mid \text{StructuredTypeldentifier} \]

\[ \text{UnpackedStructuredType} = \text{ArrayType} \mid \text{RecordType} \mid \text{SetType} \mid \text{FileType} \]

\[ \text{StructuredTypeldentifier} = \text{Typeldentifier} \]

A structured type identifier is a type identifier that denotes a structured type.
6.2.1 Array types. An array type is a structure consisting of a fixed number of components which are all of the same type, called the component type. The components are in a one-to-one correspondence with the values of the index type.

\[
\text{ArrayType} = \text{“array”} \ [\text{”IndexType} \ [\text{”,” IndexType} \ ] \ ] \ \text{“of” ComponentType}
\]

\[
\text{IndexType} = \text{OrdinalType}.
\]

\[
\text{ComponentType} = \text{Type}.
\]

More than one index type may be specified, as in

packed array [T1, T2, ..., Tn] of C,

and this is simply an abbreviation for the notation

packed array [T1] of packed array [T2, ..., Tn] of C.

These two notations would also be equivalent if neither were prefixed with packed.

Examples of array types:

- array [1..100] of Real
- array [1..10, 1..20] of 0.99
- array [Boolean] of Color
- array [Size] of packed array [’a’..’z’] of Boolean

Each value of an array type is a functional (many-to-one) mapping from the entire set of index values to the set of values of the component type.

An array type is called a string type if it is packed, has as its component type the predefined type Char and has as its index type a subrange of Integer from 1 to n, for n greater than 1. The character strings (see Section 4) are constants of string types.

Examples:

- packed array [1..String length] of Char
- packed array [1..2] of Char

6.2.2. Record types. A record type has a fixed number of components, possibly of different types. The specific components and their types, and the values of the record type, are determined by the field list of the record type.

\[
\text{RecordType} = \text{“record” FieldList “end”}.
\]

\[
\text{FieldList} = \left[ (\text{FixedPart} \ [\text{”;” VariantPart} \text{ VariantPart})[\text{”;”}] \right].
\]
FixedPart = RecordSection { ";" RecordSection }.

RecordSection = IdentifierList ";" Type.

FieldIdentifier = Identifier.

A field list may contain a fixed part, which specifies a fixed number of components called fields. A record section introduces each of the identifiers in its list to be a field identifier possessing the type given in the record section. The scope of a field identifier extends over its record type, as well as the field designators and with statements where it may be used (see Sections 7.2.2, 9.2.4, and 10.2). Thus each field identifier spelling must be unique within a record type.

Examples of record types with only fixed parts:

```pascal
packed record
  Year: 1900 .. 2100;
  Month: 1 .. 12;
  Day: 1 .. 31
end
record
  Firstname, Lastname: packed array [1 .. 32] of Char;
  Age: 0 .. 99;
  Married: Boolean
end
```

A field list may also contain a variant part, which specifies one or more variants. The structure and values of a variant are specified by its field list.

```pascal
VariantPart = "case" VariantSelector "of" Variant { ";" Variant }.

Variant = Constant [ ";" Constant ] ";" " (" FieldList " ) ".

VariantSelector = { TagField ";" } TagType.

TagType = OrdinalTypeldentifier.

TagField = Identifier.
```

A constant that prefixes a variant must denote a value of the tag type. Each such value must appear once and only once for a given variant part. If a tag field occurs in a variant selector, then it introduces its identifier as a field identifier to denote a field possessing the tag type.

Only one variant of a given variant part can be active at a given time. If there is a tag field, the variant that is prefixed by the value of the tag field is the active variant. If there is no tag field, then the active variant
is the one possessing the most recently accessed component.

A value of a field list determines a value of each field specified in the fixed part and a value of the variant part. A value of a variant part consists of an indication of which variant is active, a value of the tag field (if any), and a value of the active variant.

Examples of record types with variant parts:

```pascal
record
case NameKnown: Boolean of
  false: ( );
  true: (Name: packed array [1..NameMax] of Char);
end
record
  X, Y: Real;
  Area: Real;
case S: Shape of
  Triangle: (Side: Real;
    Inclination, Angle1, Angle2: Angle);
  Rectangle: (Side1, Side2: Real;
    Skew, Angle3: Angle);
  Circle: (Diameter: Real)
end
```

6.2.3. Set types. A set type determines as its set of values the powerset of the set of values of the base type. That is, each value of a set type is a set that contains zero or more elements (components), and each element is a value of the base type.

```
SetType = "set" "of" BaseType
BaseType = OrdinalType.
```

Examples of set types:

```
set of Char
packed set of 0..11
```

6.2.4. File types. A file type is structured as a sequence of components having a single type (the component type), together with a position in the sequence and a mode that indicates whether the file is being generated or inspected. The number of components in the sequence, called the length of the file, is not fixed by the file type. A file is called empty if its length is zero.

```
FileType = "file" "of" ComponentType.
```
The component type of a file type must be an assignable type (see Section 6.5). A file that is in inspection mode may be positioned at any component of the sequence or at the end-of-file position. A file that is in generation mode is always positioned at end-of-file. File values are manipulated by predeclared file-handling procedures and functions (see Section 11).

The predefined structured type identifier Text represents a special file type in which the sequence is structured as zero or more lines. A line consists of zero or more characters (values of type Char) followed by a special end-of-line marker. A variable of type Text is called a textfile. If a nonempty textfile is in inspection mode then there is always an end-of-line immediately preceding the end-of-file position. There are several additional predeclared procedures and functions for manipulating textfiles (see Sections 11.5 and 12). An implementation-defined set of characters may be prohibited from textfiles, and writing any of these characters to a textfile is implementation-dependent.

### 6.3. Pointer Types

A pointer type is distinguished from the structured and simple types in that its set of values is *dynamic*; i.e., values of a pointer type are created and destroyed during program execution. The set of values of a pointer type always contains a special value, represented by nil. Every other value in the set must be created by a program using the predeclared procedure New (see Section 11.4.2); such values are called identifying values because each one identifies a variable, the so-called identified variable (see Section 7.3). An identified variable possesses the domain type of the pointer type. An identifying value and its identified variable can be destroyed using the predeclared procedure Dispose (see Section 11.4.2). All identifying values created by a program cease to exist when the program terminates.

\[
\text{PointerType} = \text{“\textasciitilde” DomainType} / \text{PointerTypeIdentifier}.
\]

\[
\text{DomainType} = \text{TypeIdentifier}.
\]

\[
\text{PointerTypeIdentifier} = \text{TypeIdentifier}.
\]

### 6.4. Example of a Type Definition Part

```pascal

type
    Natural = 0..Maxint;
    Color = (Red, Yellow, Green, Blue);
```
160 Pascal Report

Hue = set of Color;
Shape = (Triangle, Rectangle, Circle);
Year = 1900..2100;
Card = array [1..80] of Char;
String18 = packed array [1..18] of Char;
Complex = record Re, Im: Real end;
PersonPointer = "Person;"
Relationship = (Married, Coupled, Single);
Person = record
   Name, Firstname: String18;
   BirthYear: Year;
   Sex: (Male, Female);
   Father, Mother: PersonPointer;
   Friends, Children: file of PersonPointer;
   ExRelationshipCount: Natural;
case Status: Relationship of
   Married, Coupled:
      (SignificantOther: PersonPointer);
   Single: ()
end;
MatrixIndex = 1..N;
SquareMatrix = array [MatrixIndex, MatrixIndex] of Real;

6.5. Type Compatibility

Two types are said to be compatible if any of the following four conditions is true.

(a) They are the same type.
(b) One is a subrange of the other, or both are subranges of the same host type.
(c) Both are set types, their base types are compatible, and either both are packed or neither is packed.
(d) Both are string types with the same number of elements.

A type is called assignable if it is neither a file type nor a structured type with a component type that is not assignable.

A value possessing type T2 is called assignment-compatible with a type T1 if any of the following four conditions is true.

(a) T1 and T2 are the same assignable type.
(b) T1 is Real and T2 is Integer.
(c) T1 and T2 are compatible ordinal types or compatible set types, and the value is a member of the set of values determined by T1.
(d) T1 and T2 are compatible string types.
Wherever assignment-compatibility is required, and $T_1$ and $T_2$ are either compatible ordinal types or compatible set types, it is an error if the value is not a member of the set of values determined by $T_1$.

### 7. Variables

A variable possesses a type that is determined by its declaration, and may take on values only of that type.

A variable is _undefined_ if it does not have a value of its type. A variable is _totally undefined_ if it is undefined and further if every component of the (structured) variable is totally undefined. When a variable is created it is totally undefined. A variable declared in a block is created when the block is activated and destroyed when the activation is terminated (see Section 10). An identified variable is created or destroyed, respectively, by the predeclared procedure _New_ or _Dispose_ (see Sections 6.3 and 11.4).

A variable declaration introduces one or more variable identifiers and the type that each one possesses. Variable declarations are collected into variable declaration parts.

$$VariableDeclarationPart = \{ \text{"var" VariableDeclaration ";", } \}$$

$$VariableDeclaration = IdentifierList "::" Type.$$

$$VariableIdentifier = Identifier.$$

**Example of a variable declaration part:**

```pascal
var
  W, X, Y: Real;
  Z: Complex;
  I, J: Integer;
  K: 0..9;
  P, Q: Boolean;
  Operator: (Plus, Minus, Times);
  GrayScale: array [0..63] of Real;
  VideoPotential:
    array [Color, Boolean] of Complex;
  Light: Color;
  F: file of Char;
  Hue1, Hue2: set of Hue;
  P1, P2: PersonPointer;
```
A, B, C: SquareMatrix;
     Minneapolis, Zuerich: packed record
         Area: Real;
         Population: Natural;
         Capital: Boolean
     end;

An access to a variable is represented by the EBNF meta-identifier
*Variable*.

\[
\text{Variable} = \text{EntireVariable} \mid \text{ComponentVariable} \mid \text{IdentifiedVariable} \mid \text{BufferVariable}
\]

### 7.1. Entire Variables

An entire variable represents the variable that is denoted by the variable identifier.

\[
\text{EntireVariable} = \text{VariableIdentific}
\]

**Examples of entire variables:**

- Input
- P1
- VideoPotential

### 7.2. Component Variables

A component of a structured variable is also a variable; a component variable represents an access to a component of a structured variable. The syntax of the component variable depends on the type of the structured variable.

\[
\text{ComponentVariable} = \text{IndexedVariable} \mid \text{FieldDesignator}
\]

An access or reference to a component of a structured variable implies an access or reference to the structured variable.

#### 7.2.1. Indexed variables

An indexed variable represents a component of an array variable. An array variable is a variable that possesses an array type.

\[
\text{IndexedVariable} = \text{ArrayVariable} \mid \text{Index} \mid \text{IdentifiedVariable}
\]

\[
\text{Index} = \text{OrdinalExpression}
\]

\[
\text{ArrayVariable} = \text{Variable}
\]

The component accessed is the one that corresponds to the value of the index expression, which must be assignment-compatible (see Section 6.5) with the index type when the access occurs. When there are
multiple index expressions, the order of their evaluation is implementation-dependent.

Examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{GrayScale}[12] \\
\text{GrayScale}[I+J] \\
\text{VideoPotential}[\text{Red}, \text{True}] \\
\end{align*}
\]

When more than one index appears, as in

\[
\text{VideoPotential}[\text{Red}, \text{True}],
\]

it is simply an abbreviation for the notation

\[
\text{VideoPotential}[\text{Red}][\text{True}].
\]

7.2.2. Field designators. A field designator denotes a field of a record variable. A record variable is a variable that possesses a record type.

\[
\text{FieldDesignator} = [\text{RecordVariable} \ "\cdot\" \ \text{FieldIdentifier}].
\]

\[
\text{RecordVariable} = \text{Variable}.
\]

The field that is denoted is the one corresponding to the field identifier; only the field identifiers belonging to the record type of the record variable may appear. The record variable and the “." may be omitted inside of a with statement (see Section 9.2.4) that lists the record variable.

Examples of field designators:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Z.Re} \\
\text{VideoPotential[Red,True].Im} \\
\text{P2\uparrow.Mother} \\
\end{align*}
\]

When a variant of a record variable becomes inactive, all of the components of the variant become totally undefined. If there is no tag field in a variant part, then an access to a component of a variant makes that variant active and the other variants inactive. It is an error if a variant is or becomes inactive while there is an access or reference to any of its components. When a tag field is undefined, no variants of that variant part are active. A tag field must not be an actual variable parameter.

7.3. Identified Variables

An identified variable denotes the variable that is identified by the value of a pointer variable. A pointer variable is a variable that possesses a pointer type.
IdentifiedVariable = PointerVariable\[j\].

PointerVariable = Variable.

An access to an identified variable implies an access to the pointer variable, at which time it is an error if the pointer variable is undefined or has the value nil. It is an error if an identifying pointer value is destroyed when a reference to the variable that the value identifies exists.

Examples of identified variables:

\[\begin{align*}
\text{pl} & \\
\text{pl}.\text{Father} & \\
\text{pl}.\text{Friends} & \\
\end{align*}\]

7.4. Buffer Variables

A file variable is a variable that possesses a file type. Every file variable is associated with a so-called buffer variable.

BufferVariable = FileVariable \[\uparrow\].

FileVariable = Variable.

If the file variable possesses the type Text, then the buffer variable possesses the type Char; otherwise the buffer variable possesses the component type of the file type possessed by the file variable. The buffer variable is used to access the current component of the file variable. It is an error to perform any operation that alters the sequence, position, or mode of a file variable when a reference to the buffer variable exists. An access or reference to a buffer variable implies an access or reference to the associated file variable.

Predeclared procedures and functions that manipulate file variables are described in Sections 11.4, 11.5, and 12.

When \text{eoln}(F) becomes true for textfile F (Section 11.5.2), the buffer variable \text{F} becomes the char value space (\texttt{'}\texttt{'}\texttt{'}). Thus \text{eoln}(F) is the only way to detect an end–of–line marker on F.

Examples of buffer variables:

\[\begin{align*}
\text{Input} & \\
\text{pl}.\text{Friends} & \\
\text{pl}.\text{Friends}.\text{Children} & \\
\end{align*}\]
8. Expressions

An expression denotes a rule of computation that yields a value when the expression is evaluated, except when the expression activates a function and that activation is terminated by a goto statement (see Sections 9.1.3 and 10). The value that is yielded depends upon the values of the constants, bounds, and variables in the expression and also upon the operators and functions that the expression invokes.

\[\text{Expression} = \text{SimpleExpression } [\text{RelationalOperator SimpleExpression}] .\]
\[\text{SimpleExpression} = [\text{Sign }] \text{Term } [\text{AddingOperator Term}] .\]
\[\text{Term} = \text{Factor } [\text{MultiplyingOperator Factor}] .\]
\[\text{Factor} = \text{UnsignedConstant } \text{BoundIdentifier } \text{Variable} \mid \text{SetConstructor} \mid \text{FunctionDesignator} \mid \text{"not" Factor } \mid \text{"(" Expression ")"}.\]
\[\text{UnsignedConstant} = \text{UnsignedNumber } \text{CharacterString} \mid \text{ConstantIdentifier} \mid \text{"nil"}.\]
\[\text{SetConstructor} = \text{"[" [ElementDescription } \mid \text{;" ElementDescription } \mid \text{"]"}.\]
\[\text{ElementDescription} = \text{OrdinalExpression } [\text{".." OrdinalExpression }].\]
\[\text{FunctionDesignator} = \text{FunctionIdentifier } [\text{ActualParameterList }].\]
\[\text{RelationalOperator} = \text{"=" } \mid \text{"<" } \mid \text{"<=" } \mid \text{">" } \mid \text{">=" } \mid \text{"in"}.\]
\[\text{AddingOperator} = \text{"+" } \mid \text{"-" } \mid \text{"or"}.\]
\[\text{MultiplyingOperator} = \text{"*" } \mid \text{"/" } \mid \text{"div" } \mid \text{"mod" } \mid \text{"and"}.\]

An ordinal expression is an expression that possesses an ordinal type. A Boolean expression or integer expression is an ordinal expression that possesses the type Boolean or Integer, respectively.

\[\text{OrdinalExpression} = \text{Expression}.\]
\[\text{BooleanExpression} = \text{OrdinalExpression}.\]
\[\text{IntegerExpression} = \text{OrdinalExpression}.\]

8.1. Operands

A multiplying operator in a term has two operands: the part of the term that precedes the operator, and the factor that immediately follows the operator. An adding operator in a simple expression has two operands:
the part of the simple expression that precedes the operator, and the
term that immediately follows the operator. The two operands of a
relational operator are the simple expressions that immediately precede
and follow the operator. The operand of a sign in a simple expression is
the term that immediately follows the sign. The operand of not in a
factor is the factor following not.

The order of evaluation of the operands of an operator is
implementation-dependent. A standard program must not make any
assumption about this order. The left operand might be evaluated before
or after the right operand, or they might be evaluated in parallel. In fact,
sometimes one operand might not be evaluated at all for some values of
the other operand. For example, evaluating the expression \((j \times (i \div j))\) when \(j\) is zero might yield zero on one implementation,
where on another implementation it might be an error due to the
division by zero.

The type of a factor is derived from the type of its constituent (e.g.,
variable or function). If the constituent’s type is a subrange, then the
type of the factor is the host type of the subrange; if the constituent’s
type is a set type with a subrange as its base type, then the type of the
factor is a set type with the host type of that subrange type as its base
type; otherwise, the type of the factor is the same as the type of the
constituent.

The symbol nil possesses every pointer type and represents the nil
value.

A set constructor denotes a set value. If there are no element
descriptions in the set constructor, then it denotes the empty set that is a
value of every set type. Otherwise, the elements of the set value are
described by the element descriptions in the set constructor. All
expressions in the element descriptions of a set constructor must have
the same type, which is the base type of the type of the set constructor.
The type of a set constructor is both packed and unpacked, and is
compatible with any other set type that has a compatible base type.

An element description consisting of a single expression describes
the element that has the value denoted by the expression. An element
description of the form \(a..b\) describes an element for each value \(x\)
that satisfies \(a \leq x \leq b\). If \(a > b\), then \(a..b\) denotes no elements.
The order of evaluation of the expressions in an element description and
the order of evaluation of the element descriptions in a set constructor are implementation–dependent.

The evaluation of a factor consisting of a variable specifies an access to the variable and denotes the value of the variable; it is an error if the variable is undefined.

The evaluation of a factor consisting of a function designator specifies an activation of the function that is denoted by the function identifier (see Section 10.3). Any actual parameters are substituted for their corresponding formal parameters (see Section 11.3). Upon completion of the activation’s algorithm, the factor denotes the value of the result of the activation; it is an error if the result is undefined.

8.2 Operators

The rules of composition specify operator *precedences* according to four classes of operators. The operator *not* has the highest precedence, followed by the so–called multiplying operators, then the so–called adding operators, and finally, with the lowest precedence, the relational operators. Sequences of operators of the same precedence are executed from left to right. The rules of precedence are reflected in the EBNF rules for *Expression, Simple–Expression, Term, and Factor* (above).

Operators are also classified as arithmetic, Boolean, set, and relational operators according to their operand and result types.

8.2.1. Arithmetic operators. An arithmetic operator takes integer or real operands and yields an integer or real results. This table summarizes operators that take one operand (the signs).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operand</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>identity</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>same as operand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>sign inversion</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>same as operand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table summarizes the operators that take two operands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operands</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>addition</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>subtraction</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>multiplication</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/</td>
<td>division</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>Real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>division</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod</td>
<td>modulo</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The result type of addition, subtraction and multiplication is Integer if both operands are Integer, otherwise it is Real.

Evaluating a term of the form $x / y$ is an error if $y$ is zero.

Evaluating a term of the form $x \div y$ is an error if $y$ is zero; otherwise the term yields the value satisfying the two rules:

(a) $\text{abs}(x) - \text{abs}(y) < \text{abs}(x \div y) \ast y < \text{abs}(x)$

(b) $x \div y = 0$ if $\text{abs}(x) < \text{abs}(y)$, otherwise $x \div y$

is positive if $x$ and $y$ have the same sign and is negative if $x$ and $y$ have different signs.

Evaluation of a term of the form $x \mod y$ is an error if $y$ is less than or equal to zero; otherwise there is an integer $k$ such that $x \mod y$

satisfies the following relation:

$$0 \leq x \mod y = x \ast k \ast y < y.$$  

For any integer operators, if both operands are in the range $-\text{Maxint}..\text{Maxint}$ and if the correct result is in that range, then a standard implementation must yield the correct result. However, if the operands or result is not in the range $-\text{Maxint}..\text{Maxint}$, an implementation may choose either to perform the operation correctly or to treat the operation as an error.

Any operator or predeclared function (see Section 11.5) that yields a real result must always be considered to be approximate, not exact. The accuracy of real operations and predeclared functions is implementation–defined.

8.2.2. Boolean Operators. The Boolean operators are summarized by the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operands</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>logical “or”</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>logical “and”</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>logical “not”</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.2.3. Set Operators. The set operators are summarized by the following table. The two operands must always possess compatible types (see Section 6.5). The result type is packed if both operand types are packed, and is non–packed if both operand types are non–packed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operands</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>set union</td>
<td>set of T</td>
<td>set of T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>set difference</td>
<td>set of T</td>
<td>set of T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>set intersection</td>
<td>set of T</td>
<td>set of T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.2.4. Relational Operators. The relational operators are summarized by the following table. With the exception of the operator in, the types possessed by the operands either must be compatible, or one must be Real and the other must be Integer. For in, the first (left) operand must possess an ordinal type that is compatible with the base type of the set type possessed by the second operand.

The expression \( x \leq y \) where \( x \) and \( y \) are sets yields true if every member of \( x \) is a member of \( y \), i.e., if \( x \) is a subset of \( y \).

The ordering of compatible strings is according to the ordering of the values of type Char (see Section 6.1.2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operands</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>equality</td>
<td>simple, pointer, set, or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>inequality</td>
<td>simple, pointer, set, or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>less than or equal</td>
<td>simple or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>set inclusion</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>greater than or equal</td>
<td>simple or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>set inclusion</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>less than</td>
<td>simple or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>greater than</td>
<td>simple or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>set membership</td>
<td>ordinal and set</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of factors:

\[
X \quad 15 \\
(W + X + Y) \quad \sin(X+Y) \\
[\text{Red, Light, Green}] \quad [1, 5, 10..19, 60] \\
\text{not } P
\]

Examples of terms:

\[
X \times Y \quad I/(1-I) \\
Q \text{ and } \text{not } P \quad (X \leq Y) \text{ and } (Y < W)
\]

Examples of simple expressions:

\[
X + \text{GrayScale}[2 \times I] \quad -X \\
P \text{ or } Q \quad \text{Hue1 + Hue2} \\
I*J + 1
\]

Examples of expressions:

\[
X = 1.5 \quad P \leq Q \\
(I < J) = (J < K) \quad \text{Light in Hue1}
\]
9. Statements

Statements denote algorithmic actions, and are said to be executable. A statement may be prefixed by a label which can be referred to by goto statements. Statements are collected into statement parts.

\[
\text{Statement} = \{ \text{Label } : \} \left( \text{SimpleStatement} \setminus \text{StructuredStatement} \right)
\]

\[
\text{StatementPart} = \text{CompoundStatement}
\]

9.1. Simple Statements

A simple statement is a statement of which no part constitutes another statement. The empty statement consists of no symbols and denotes no action.

\[
\text{SimpleStatement} = \text{EmptyStatement} \setminus \text{AssignmentStatement} \setminus \text{ProcedureStatement} \setminus \text{GotoStatement}
\]

\[
\text{EmptyStatement} = .
\]

9.1.1. Assignment statements. The assignment statement serves to access the variable or function-activation result and to replace its current value by the value obtained by evaluating the expression.

\[
\text{AssignmentStatement} = \left( \text{Variable} \setminus \text{FunctionIdentifier} \right) \text{":=" Expression}
\]

The value of the expression must be assignment-compatible (see Section 6.5) with the type of the variable or function identifier. The order of accessing the variable or result and evaluating the expression is implementation-dependent. The access to the variable establishes a reference to the variable that exists until the value is assigned.

Examples of assignment statements:

\[
\begin{align*}
X & := Y + \text{GrayScale}[31] \\
P & := (I <= 1) \text{ and } (I < 100) \\
I & := \text{sqr}(K) - (I*J) \\
\text{Hue2} & := \{\text{Blue}, \text{succ}(C)\}
\end{align*}
\]

9.1.2. Procedure statements. A procedure statement serves to activate the procedure denoted by the procedure identifier. The procedure statement may contain a list of actual parameters which are substituted in place of their corresponding formal parameters defined in the procedure declaration (see 11.1).
ProcedureStatement = ProcedureIdentifier [ ActualParameterList | WriteParameterList ].

If the procedure identifier denotes the standard procedure Write or Writeln, then the actual parameters must follow the syntax specified for a WriteParameterList. If the procedure identifier denotes any other predeclared procedure, then the actual parameters must satisfy the rules stated in Sections 11.4 and 12.

Examples of procedure statements:

Next
Transpose(A,N,N)
Bisect(Fct, -1.0, +1.0, X)
Writeln(Output, ' Title')

9.1.3. Goto statements. A goto statement serves to indicate that further processing should continue at another part of the program, namely at the program-point denoted by the label (see Sections 10.1 and 10.3).

GotoStatement = “goto” Label.

The statement that is prefixed by a label and each goto statement that refers to that label must satisfy one of the following two rules.

(a) The statement either must contain the goto statement or else must be one of the statements in a statement sequence (see Section 9.2) that contains the goto statement.

(b) The statement must be one of the statements in the statement sequence of the compound statement of the statement part of the block where the label is declared, and the goto statement must be contained in the procedure and function declaration part of that block (see Section 10.1).

The effect of these rules is to prevent goto statements transferring control into a structured statement or a procedure or function from outside. The first rule also disallows a goto transferring control between “branches” of a conditional statement.

If the label and the goto statement are not in the same statement part, then every activation that does not satisfy one of the following two conditions is terminated (see Section 10.3).
The activation contains the program-point.
(b) The activation contains the activation-point of another activation that is not terminated (i.e., that satisfies one of these two conditions).

9.2. Structured Statements

Structured statements are constructs composed of other statements which have to be executed either in sequence (compound statement), conditionally (conditional statement), repeatedly (repetitive statements), or within an expanded scope (with statement).

StructuredStatement = CompoundStatement \ ConditionalStatement \ RepetitiveStatement \ WithStatement.

A statement sequence is a sequence of statements that are to be executed in the sequence that they are written, except where a goto statement indicates otherwise.

StatementSequence = Statement \ Statement.

Statement sequences are used in compound statements (Section 9.2.1), and repeat statements (Section 9.2.3.2).

9.2.1. Compound statements. A compound statement specifies the execution of the statement sequence. The symbols begin and end act as statement brackets.

CompoundStatement = "begin" StatementSequence "end".

Examples of compound statements:
begin end
begin W := X; X := Y; Y := W end

9.2.2. Conditional statements. A conditional statement selects for execution one of its component statements.

ConditionalStatement = IfStatement \ CaseStatement.

9.2.2.1. If statements. The if statement specifies that the statement following the symbol then be executed only if the Boolean expression yields true. If it is false, then the statement following the symbol else, if any, is to be executed.

IfStatement = "if" BooleanExpression "then" Statement
[ "else" Statement ].
Note: The syntactic ambiguity arising from the construct

\[
\text{if } e1 \text{ then if } e2 \text{ then } s1 \text{ else } s2
\]

is resolved by interpreting the construct as equivalent to

\[
\text{if } e1 \text{ then}
\begin{align*}
\text{begin if } e2 \text{ then } s1 \text{ else } s2 \text{ end}
\end{align*}
\]

Examples of if statements:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{if } x < 1.5 \text{ then } W := X + Y \text{ else } W := 1.5 \\
\text{if } P1 <> \text{ nil then } P1 := P1^\uparrow.\text{Father}
\end{align*}
\]

9.2.2.2. Case statements. The case statement consists of an ordinal expression (the case index) and a list of statements, each being prefixed by one or more constants of the type of the case index. It specifies that the one statement be executed that is prefixed by the value of the case index; it is an error if no constant denoting that value prefixes any statement. Each value must be specified by at most one case constant.

\[
\text{CaseStatement} = \text{“case” } \text{CaseIndex} \text{ “of”}
\begin{align*}
\text{Case} \mid \text{“;” } \text{Case} \mid \text{“;” } \text{“end”}.
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{CaseIndex} = \text{OrdinalExpression}.
\]

\[
\text{Case} = \text{Constant} \mid \text{“;” } \text{Constant} \mid \text{“;” } \text{Statement}.
\]

Examples of case statements:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{case } \text{Operator of} \\
\text{Plus: } W := X + Y; \\
\text{Minus: } W := X - Y; \\
\text{Times: } W := X \ast Y \\
\text{end}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{case } I \text{ of} \\
1: Y := \sin(X); \\
2: Y := \cos(X); \\
3: Y := \exp(X); \\
4: Y := \ln(X) \\
\text{end}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{case } P1^\uparrow.\text{Status of} \\
\text{Married, Coupled: } P2 := P1^\uparrow.\text{SignificantOther}; \\
\text{Single: } P2 := \text{nil}; \\
\text{end}
\end{align*}
\]

9.2.3. Repetitive statements. Repetitive statements specify that certain statements are to be executed repeatedly. If the number of repetitions is known beforehand, i.e., before the repetitions are started, the for statement is often the appropriate construct; otherwise the while or repeat statement should be used.
RepetitiveStatement = WhileStatement ∪ RepeatStatement ∪ ForStatement.

9.2.3.1. While statement.

WhileStatement = “while” BooleanExpression “do” Statement.

The statement is repeatedly executed until the expression becomes false. If its value is false at the beginning, the statement is not executed at all. The while statement

while B do S

is equivalent to (unless S contains a labelled statement):

if B then begin S; while B do S end

Examples of while statements:

while GrayScale[I] < : do I := succ(I)
while I > 0 do
begin
  if odd(I) then Y := Y * X;
  I := I div 2;
  X := sqr(X)
end
while not eof(F) do begin
  P(F); Get(F)
end

9.2.3.2. Repeat statements.

RepeatStatement = “repeat” StatementSequence “until” BooleanExpression.

The statement sequence is repeatedly executed (and at least once) until the expression becomes true. The repeat statement

repeat S until B

is equivalent to

begin S; if not B then repeat S until B end

unless S contains a labelled statement.

Examples of repeat statements:

repeat K := I mod J; I := J; J := K until J = 0
repeat
  P(F); Get(F)
until eof(F)
9.2.3.3. **For statements.** The for statement indicates that a statement is to be repeatedly executed while a progression of values is assigned to a variable that is called the *control variable* of the for statement.

\[
\text{ForStatement} = \text{“for” ControlVariable “:=” InitialValue} \\
\quad (\text{“to” | “downto”}) FinalValue \text{ “do” Statement}. \\
\text{ControlVariable} = \text{VariableIdentifier}. \\
\text{InitialValue} = \text{OrdinalExpression}. \\
\text{FinalValue} = \text{OrdinalExpression}. \\
\]

The control variable must be local to the block (see Section 10.2) whose statement part contains the for statement, and must possess an ordinal type that is compatible with the types of the initial value and final value.

A statement \( s \) is said to threaten a variable \( v \) if any of the following conditions are true.

(a) \( s \) is an assignment statement that assigns to \( v \).
(b) \( s \) contains \( v \) occurring as an actual variable parameter (see section 11.3.2.2).
(c) \( s \) is a procedure statement that activates the predeclared procedure `read` or `readln` and \( v \) is one of its actual parameters.
(d) \( s \) is a for statement and \( v \) is its control variable.

No statement inside the for statement must threaten the control variable. also, no procedure or function declared local to the block in which the control variable is declared may contain a statement that threatens the control variable. these rules ensure that the repeated statement cannot alter the value of the control variable.

Let \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \) be new variables (not otherwise accessible) possessing the same type as \( v \), and let \( p \) be a new variable possessing type Boolean. then with the exceptions noted in comments, the following equivalences hold.

\[
\text{for } v := e_1 \text{ to } e_2 \text{ do } s \\
\]

is equivalent to

\[
\text{begin} \\
\quad T_1 := e_1; \; T_2 := e_2; \\
\quad \text{if } T_1 \leq T_2 \text{ then begin}
\]
{T2 must be assignment-compatible with the type of V}
V := T1; P := false
repeat
S;
if V = T2 then P := true else V := succ(V)
until P
end
{ V becomes undefined } end

and

for V := e1 downto e2 do

is equivalent to

begin
T1 := e1; T2 := e2;
if T1 >= T2 then begin
{ T2 must be assignment-compatible with the type of V }
V := T1; P := false;
repeat
S;
if V = T2 then P := true
else V := pred(V)
until P
end
{ V becomes undefined } end

Examples of for statements:

for I := 1 to 63 do
  if GrayScale[I] > 0.5 then write ('**')
  else write ('  ')
for I := 1 to n do
  for J := 1 to n do
    begin
      X := 0;
      for K := 1 to n do
      C[I,J] := X
    end
for Light := Red to pred(Light) do
  if Light in Hue2 then Q(Light)

9.2.4. With statements. A with statement accesses and establishes a reference to each record variable in its list, and then executes the component statement. The reference exists during the execution of the component statement.
WithStatement = "with" RecordVariableList "do" Statement.

RecordVariableList = RecordVariable { "," RecordVariable }.

The scope (see Section 10.2) of each of the field identifiers of the type of a (single) record variable listed in a with statement is extended to include the component statement. Within this extended scope, the field identifier can occur in a field designator without respecifying the record variable, and will denote the appropriate field of the referenced variable.

The notation

    with r1, r2, ..., rn do S

is an abbreviation for the notation

    with r1 do
    with r1 do
    ...
    with rn do S

Example of with statement:

    with Date do
        if Month = 12 then
            begin Month := 1; Year := succ(Year) end
        else Month := succ(Month)

This is equivalent to

    if Date.Month = 12 then begin
        Date.Month := 1; Date.Year := succ(Date.Year)
    end else Date.Month := succ(Date.Month)

10. Blocks, Scope, and Activations

Blocks are the basis for constructing programs (see Section 13) and procedures and functions (see Section 11). The scope rules determine where an identifier spelling that is introduced in a particular place can be used, based on the static (textual) program structure. The activation rules determine what entity (e.g., variable) is denoted by a particular identifier or label, based on the dynamic (execution) program structure.

10.1. Blocks

A block consists of several definition and declaration parts, any of which may be empty, and a statement part.
Block = LabelDeclarationPart ConstantDefinitionPart TypeDefinitionPart
VariableDeclarationPart ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart
StatementPart.

The label declaration part introduces zero or more labels, each of which must prefix one statement in the statement part.

LabelDeclarationPart = [ "label", DigitSequence [ ",", DigitSequence ] ;; ].
Label = DigitSequence.

The spelling of a label is the apparent integral value that its digit sequence describes in the usual decimal notation; the value must not exceed 9999.

10.2. Scope

A definition or declaration introduces a spelling of an identifier or a label and associates the spelling with a specific meaning (e.g., a variable identifier). The parts of a program in which every occurrence of that spelling must take on that meaning are collectively called the scope of the introduction (definition or declaration). The occurrence of a spelling in its introduction must precede every other occurrence of that spelling within the scope of the introduction, with one exception. The exception is that a type–identifier spelling may occur as the domain type of a pointer type (see Section 6.3) anywhere in the type definition part that contains the spelling’s introduction.

Each introduction is effective for some region of the program, as described below. The scope of the introduction is that region less any enclosed region for which another introduction of the same spelling is effective.

The following introductions are effective for the block in which the introduction occurs: a label in a label declaration part; a constant identifier in a constant definition part or in an enumerated type; a type identifier in a type definition part; a variable identifier in a variable declaration part; a procedure identifier in a procedure declaration (see Section 11.1); and a function identifier in a function declaration (see Section 11.2). These labels and identifiers are said to be local to the block.

The implicit introduction of standard predefined and predeclared
identifiers is effective for a region that surrounds every program.

The introduction of a field identifier in a record type is effective for each of the following regions:
(a) the record type itself;
(b) the component statement of a with statement where the record variable of the with statement possesses that record type; and
(c) the field–identifier part of a field designator where the record–variable part of the field designator possesses that record type.

In the case of (c), the field–identifier part is excluded from all other enclosing scopes.

The introduction of a parameter identifier in a parameter list (see Section 11.3.1) is effective for the parameter list. Furthermore, if the parameter list is in the procedure heading of a procedure declaration or in the function heading of a function declaration, then a variable identifier, bound identifier, procedure identifier, or function identifier that has the same spelling as the parameter identifier is introduced effective for the block of that procedure declaration or function declaration.

10.3. Activations
An activation of a program (see Section 13), or a procedure or function (see Section 11) is an activation of the block of the program, procedure, or function.

An activation of a block is said to contain the following entities, which exist until the activation terminates.
(a) An algorithm that is specified by the statement part of the block; the algorithm commences when the block is activated, and completion of the algorithm terminates the activation. (The activation might instead terminate due to a goto statement — see Section 9.1.3.)
(b) A program–point in the algorithm corresponding to each label that prefixes a statement in the statement part of the block. Each appearance of that label in a goto statement within the activation denotes that program–point.
(c) A variable for each variable identifier that is local to the block; when the algorithm commences, the variable is
totally undefined unless the variable identifier is a program parameter. Each appearance of that variable identifier within the activation denotes that variable.

(d) A *procedure* for each procedure identifier that is local to the block; the procedure has the block and formal parameters of the procedure declaration that introduced the procedure identifier. Each occurrence of that procedure identifier within the activation denotes that procedure.

(e) A *function* for each function identifier that is local to the block; the function has the block, formal parameters, and result type of the function declaration that introduced the function identifier. Each occurrence of that function identifier within the activation denotes that function.

(f) A *variable* for each variable identifier that is a formal value parameter identifier for the block; when the algorithm commences, the variable has the value of the corresponding actual parameter in the procedure statement or function designator that activated the procedure or function. Each occurrence of that variable identifier within the activation denotes that variable.

(g) A *reference* for each variable identifier that is a formal variable parameter identifier for the block; the reference is to the variable that is denoted by the corresponding actual parameter when the algorithm commences. Each occurrence of that variable identifier within the activation denotes the referenced variable.

(h) A *reference* to a procedure or function for each formal procedural or functional parameter identifier for the block; the reference is to the procedure or function that is denoted by the corresponding actual parameter when the algorithm commences. Each occurrence of that procedure identifier or function identifier within the activation denotes that procedure or function.

(i) If the activated block is a function block, a *result* that is undefined when the algorithm commences.

An activation of the block of a procedure or function is said to be *within* the activation that contains the procedure or function. If an activation A is within an activation B, then A is also said to be *within*
any other activation that B is within.

A procedure statement or function designator that is contained in an algorithm and that specifies the activation of a block is called the activation-point of that activation.

11. Procedures and Functions

Procedures and functions are named program parts that are activated by procedure statements (Section 9.1.2) and function designators (Section 8.1), respectively. The programmer can declare new procedures and functions as needed. Procedure declarations and function declarations are collected into procedure and function declaration parts.

\[
\text{ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart} = \[ (\text{ProcedureDeclaration} \mid \text{FunctionDeclaration} ) \ "\ ;" \] .
\]

In addition, each implementation is required to provide numerous “predeclared” procedures and functions. Since these, as all such entities, are assumed to be declared in a scope surrounding the program, no conflict arises from a declaration redefining the same identifier within the program.

11.1. Procedure Declarations

A procedure declaration serves to introduce a procedure identifier, and to associate the identifier with a block and possibly with a formal parameter list. The procedure heading of a procedure declaration introduces the procedure identifier and the formal parameter list.

A procedure may be declared by a single procedure declaration consisting of the procedure heading and the block. This is the most common form.

Alternatively, it may be declared with a “forward declaration”: one procedure declaration consists of the procedure heading and the directive forward, and a second declaration in the same procedure and function declaration part consists of a procedure identification and the block. The procedure identifier in the procedure identification must be the identifier introduced by the first declaration. Note that the formal parameter list, if any, is not specified in the second declaration.
ProcedureDeclaration = ProcedureHeading “;” Block | ProcedureHeading “;” Directive \ ProcedureIdentification “;” Block.

ProcedureHeading = “procedure” Identifier [ FormalParameterList ].
ProcedureIdentification = “procedure” ProcedureIdentifier.
ProcedureIdentifier = Identifier.

The use of the procedure identifier in a procedure statement within the block of its declaration implies recursive execution of the procedure.

Example of procedure declarations:

procedure ReadInteger (var F: Text; var X: Integer);
var S: Natural;
begin
while F <> ' ' do Get();
S := 0;
while F in ['0'..'9'] do begin
S := 10 * S + (ord(F) - ord('0'));
Get(F)
end;
X := S
end { ReadInteger } ;

procedure Bisect (function F(X: Real): Real;
A, B: Real; var Z: Real);
var M: Real;
begin { assume F(A) < 0 \ F(B) > 0 }
while abs(A-B) > 1e-10 * abs(A) do begin
M := (A + B) / 2.0;
if F(M) < 0 then A := M else B := M
end;
Z := M
end { Bisect } ;

procedure GCD (M, N: Integer; var X, Y, Z: Integer);
{ Greatest Common Divisor X of M and N, assuming M >= 0 and N > 0; Euclid’s Algorithm. }
var A1, A2, B1, B2, C, Q, R: Integer;
begin
A1 := 0; A2 := 1; B1 := 1; B2 := 0;
C := M; D := N;
while D <> 0 do begin
and GCD(C,D) = GCD(M,N)
Q := C div R;  R := C mod D;
A2 := A2 - Q*A1;  B2 := B2 - Q*B1;
C := D;  D := R;
R := A1;  A1 := A2;  A2 := R;
R := B1;  B1 := B2;  B2 := R
end;
X := C;  Y := A2;  Z := B2
{ X = GCD (M,N) = Y*M + Z*N }
end { GCD };

11.2 Function Declarations

A function declaration serves to introduce a function identifier, and to
associate the identifier with a result type, with a block, and possibly
with a formal parameter list. The function heading of a function
declaration introduces the function identifier, the result type, and the
formal parameter list.

A function may be declared by a single function declaration
consisting of the function heading and the block. This is the most
common form.

Alternatively, it may be declared with a “forward declaration”: one
function declaration consists of the function heading and the directive
forward, and a second declaration in the same procedure and function
declaration part consists of a function identification and the block. The
function identifier in the function identification must be the identifier
introduced by the first declaration. Note that the formal parameter list,
if any, and the result type are not specified in the second declaration.

The block of a function declaration must contain at least one
assignment to the function identifier. The use of the function identifier
in a function designator within the block of its declaration
implies recursive execution of the function.
Example of function declarations:

```pascal
function sqrt(X: Real): Real;
{ Newton’s method }
var X0, X1: Real;
begin
X1 := X; { X > 1, Newton’s method }
repeat X0 := X1; X1 := (X0 + X/X0)*0.5
until abs(X1 - X0) < Ep * X1;
sqrt := X0
end { sqrt } ;

function Max(A: Vector; N: Integer): Real;
{ Return the maximum value of elements A[1], ..., A[N]. }
var X: Real; I: Integer;
begin
X := A[1];
for I := 2 to N do begin
{ X = Max( A[1], ..., A[I-1] ) }
if X < A[I] then X := A[I]
end;
{ X = Max( A[1], ..., A[N] ) }
Max := X
end { Max } ;

function GCD(M, N: Natural): Natural;
begin
if N = 0 then GCD := M else GCD := GCD(N, M mod N)
end;

function Power(X: Real; Y: Natural): Real;
var W, Z: Real; I: Natural;
begin
W := X; Z := 1; I := Y;
while I > 0 do begin
{ (W ** I) = X ** Y }
if odd(I) then Z := Z * W;
I := I div 2;
W := sqr(W)
end;
{ Z = X ** Y }
Power := Z
end { Power } ;
```

11.3 Parameters

Parameters allow each activation of a procedure or function to operate on entities (values, variables, procedures, functions) that are specified
at the activation point (see Section 10.3) by an actual parameter list. The formal parameter list in the procedure or function heading determines the identifiers by which those entities are known in the block of the procedure or function, and the nature and type required of the actual parameters.

The actual parameters for predeclared procedures and functions do not always conform to the rules for ordinary procedures and functions (see Sections 11.4, 11.5 and 12).

11.3.1. Formal parameter lists.

\[
\text{FormalParameterList} = \text{"(" FormalParameterSection} \\
\text{\{} \text{";" FormalParameterSection } \text{")"}.}
\]

\[
\text{FormalParameterSection} = \text{ValueParameterSpecification} \mid \\
\text{VariableParameterSpecification} \mid \\
\text{ProceduralParameterSpecification} \mid \text{FunctionalParameterSpecification.}
\]

The parameters specified by a formal parameter section are either value, variable, procedural, or functional parameters.

11.3.1.1. Formal value and variable parameters. A value or variable parameter specification introduces each of the identifiers in its identifier list as a variable identifier. If a type identifier occurs, it denotes the type possessed by each variable identifier. If a conformant–array schema occurs, each of the variable identifiers is called a conformant–array parameter, and the type that it possesses depends on the type of the actual parameter. Within a given activation, all formal parameters defined in the same formal parameter section possess the same type.

Note: Conformant–array schemas are not supported by all implementations of Pascal. In particular, Level 0 implementations do not support them, whereas Level 1 implementations do.

\[
\text{ValueParameterSpecification} = \text{IdentifierList }:\text{";" ( TypeIdentifier} \\
\text{ConformantArraySchema ).}
\]

\[
\text{VariableParameterSpecification} = \text{"var" IdentifierList }:\text{";"} \\
\text{( TypeIdentifier }\mid \text{ConformantArraySchema ).}
\]

\[
\text{ConformantArraySchema} = \text{PackedConformantArraySchema }\mid \\
\text{UnpackedConformantArraySchema.}
\]
PackedConformantArraySchema = ‘packed’ “array”
“[” IndexTypeSpecification “]” “of” Typelentifier .

UnpackedConformantArraySchema = “array”
“[” IndexTypeSpecification { “;” IndexTypeSpecification } “]”
“of” ( Typelentifier | ConformantArraySchema ) .

IndexTypeSpecification = Identifier “;” Identifier “;” OrdinalTypelentifier .

Boundlentifier = Identifier .

An index type specification introduces the two identifiers as bound
identifiers possessing the type denoted by the ordinal type identifier.
The conformant–array schema
array[Low1..High1: T1; Low2..High2: T2] of T
is simply an abbreviation for
array[Low1..High1: T1] of array[Low2..High2: T2] of T

Example of a conformant–array parameter:

N: Integer): Real;
{Program derived from function Max shown in 11.2.}
var X: Real;  I: Integer : begin
X:= A[L];
for I := succ(L) to N do begin
if X < A[I] then X := A[I]
end;
{ X = Max( A[L], . . . , A[N] ) }
Max := X
end { Max } ;

11.3.1.2. Formal procedural and functional parameters. A
procedural parameter specification introduces the procedure identifier
with any associated formal parameter list defined by the procedure
heading.


A functional parameter specification introduces the function
identifier with the result type and any associated formal parameter list
defined by the function heading.

FunctionalParameterSpecification = FunctionHeading .
11.3.2. Actual parameter lists. An actual parameter list at an activation point, i.e., at a procedure statement or a function designator, specifies the actual parameters that are to be substituted for the formal parameters of the procedure or function for that activation. If the procedure or function has no formal parameter list, then there must be no actual parameter list. The correspondence between actual parameters and formal parameters is established by positions of the parameters in their respective lists. The order of substitution of actual parameters in a list is implementation-dependent.

\[ \text{ActualParameterList} = \left( \right. \text{Actual Parameter} \left. \right\} \text{ActualParameter} \left. \right\} \right) \).

\[ \text{ActualParameter} = \text{Expression} | \text{Variable} | \text{ProcedureIdentifier} | \text{FunctionIdentifier} . \]

All actual parameters at a given activation point that correspond to formal conformant–array parameters defined in the same formal parameter section must possess the same type, which must be conformable (Section 11.3.4) with the conformant–array schema of the formal parameter section. All of the corresponding formal parameters within a given activation have the same type, which is derived through the conformant–array schema from the type of the actual parameter(s) (see Section 11.3.4).

11.3.2.1. Actual value parameters. An actual value parameter is an expression. The formal parameter denotes a variable that is assigned the value of the actual parameter when the variable is created (see Section 10.3).

If the formal parameter is not a conformant–array parameter, then the value of the actual parameter must be assignment-compatible (see Section 6.5) with the type of the formal parameter.

If the formal parameter is a conformant–array parameter, then the type of the actual parameter must not be a conformant type (see Section 11.3.4).

11.3.2.2. Actual variable parameters. An actual variable parameter is a variable. Throughout the activation the formal parameter denotes the variable that is denoted by the actual parameter when the activation
commences (see Section 10.3). The actual parameter must denote neither a component of a packed array or record variable nor a tag field. If the formal parameter is not a conformant–array parameter, then the actual parameter and the formal parameter must possess the same type.

11.3.2.3. **Actual procedural parameters.** An actual procedural parameter is a procedure identifier. The formal parameter denotes the procedure that is denoted by the actual parameter (see Section 10.3). The formal parameter lists, if any, of the formal and actual parameters must be congruent (Section 11.3.3).

11.3.2.4. **Actual functional Parameters.** An actual functional parameter is a function identifier. The formal parameter denotes the function that is denoted by the actual parameter (see Section 10.3). The result types of the formal and actual parameters must denote the same type. The formal parameter lists, if any, of the formal and actual parameters must be congruent (Section 11.3.3).

11.3.3. **Parameter–list congruity** Two formal parameter lists are congruent if they have the same number of parameter sections, and if corresponding formal parameter sections satisfy one of the following conditions.

(a) Both are value parameter specifications with the same number of identifiers in their identifier lists, and either they both contain type identifiers that denote the same type or else they both contain equivalent conformant–array schemas.

(b) Both are variable parameter specifications with the same number of identifiers in their identifier lists, and either they both contain type identifiers that denote the same type or else they both contain equivalent conformant–array schemas.

(c) Both are procedural parameter specifications with congruent formal parameter lists.

(d) Both are functional parameter specifications with congruent formal parameter lists and with result types that denote the same type.
Two conformant array schemas (each with a single index type specification) are *equivalent* if all three of the following conditions are true.

(a) The ordinal type identifiers in the index type specifications denote the same type.

(b) Either each contains a component conformant–array schema and the component schemas are equivalent, or else each contains a component type identifier and the component type identifiers denote the same type.

(c) Both schemas are packed conformant–array schemas or else both are non–packed conformant–array schemas.

*Example of two equivalent conformant array schemas:*

```
array [L1..H1: Integer; L2..H2: Color] of
  packed array [L3..H3: T2] of T

array [Low1..High1: Integer] of
  array [Low2..High2: Color] of
    packed array [Low3..High3: T2] of T
```

11.3.4. Conformability and conformant types. An array type \( T \) (with a single index type) is said to be *conformable* with a conformant array schema \( S \) (with a single index type specification) if all of the following conditions are true. Let \( I \) represent the ordinal type identifier of the index type specification of \( S \).

(a) The index type of \( T \) is compatible with the type denoted by \( I \).

(b) Every value of the index type of \( T \) is a member of the set of values of the type denoted by \( I \).

(c) If \( S \) does not contain a conformant–array schema, then the component type of \( T \) is the same as the type denoted by the type identifier in \( S \); otherwise, the component type of \( T \) is conformable with the component schema of \( S \).

(d) \( T \) is packed if and only if \( S \) is a packed conformant–array schema.

Wherever conformability is required, it is an error if condition (b) does not hold.

A type that is called a conformant type derived through \( S \) from \( T \) is an array type that has the same index type as \( T \), is packed if and only if \( T \)
is packed, and has a component type that either is the same type as the component type of \( T \) or else, it \( B \) contains another component conformant array schema, is a conformant type derived through the component schema from the component type of \( T \). The bound identifiers introduced in the index type specification denote the smallest and largest values of the index type of the conformant type.

11.4. Predeclared Procedures

11.4.1. File handling procedures. There are several predeclared procedures that are specifically defined for use with textfiles. These are described in detail in Section 12. The following procedures operate on any file variable \( f \) (see Sections 6.4.2 and 7.4).

- **Rewrite** \((f)\) causes \( f \) to have an empty sequence and to be in generation mode.
- **Put** \((f)\) is an error if \( f \) is undefined or is not in generation mode, or if the buffer variable \( f\uparrow \) is undefined. Appends the value of \( f \) to the end of the sequence of \( f \).
- **Reset** \((f)\) causes \( f \) to be placed in inspection mode, and the position in its sequence becomes the first position. If the sequence is empty, \( \text{eof}(f) \) becomes true and \( f\uparrow \) becomes totally undefined; otherwise, \( \text{eof}(f) \) becomes false and \( f\uparrow \) takes on the value of the first component of the sequence.
- **Get** \((f)\) is an error if \( f \) is undefined or if \( \text{eof}(f) \) is true. Causes the position in the sequence to be advanced to the next component, if any, and \( f\uparrow \) to take on its value; if no next component exists, \( \text{eof}(f) \) becomes true and \( f\uparrow \) becomes totally undefined.

In each of the following definitions, all occurrences of \( f \) denote the same file non-text file variable, the symbols \( v, v_1, \ldots, v_n \) represent variables, and \( e, e_1, \ldots, e_n \) represent expressions. Note that the variables \( v, v_1, \ldots, v_n \) are not actual variable parameters, and thus they may be components of packed arrays or records. Read and Write of textfiles are defined in Section 12.
Read(f,v1,...,vn) is equivalent to the statement
\begin{verbatim}
begin Read(f,v1);...;Read(f,vn) end
\end{verbatim}

Read(f,v) is equivalent to the statement
\begin{verbatim}
begin v:= f\[uparrow\]; Get(f) end
\end{verbatim}

Write(f,e1,...,en) is equivalent to the statement
\begin{verbatim}
begin Write(f,e1);...;Write(f,en) end
\end{verbatim}

Write(f,e) is equivalent to the statement
\begin{verbatim}
begin f\[uparrow\] := e; Put(f) end
\end{verbatim}

11.4.2. Dynamic allocation procedures. Dynamic allocation procedures are the means by which new pointer values and their identified variables are created (New) and destroyed (Dispose). In these descriptions, \( p \) is a pointer variable, \( q \) is a pointer expression, and \( c1,\ldots, cn, k1,\ldots, kn \) are constants. Note that \( p \) is not an actual variable parameter, and thus it may be a component of a packed array or record.

New(p) creates a new identifying pointer value having the type that is possessed by \( p \) and assigns it to \( p \). The identified variable \( p\uparrow \) is totally undefined.

New(p,c1,\ldots, cn) creates a new identifying pointer value having the type that is possessed by \( p \) and assigns it to \( p \). The identified variable \( p\uparrow \) is totally undefined. The domain type of that pointer type must be a record type with variant part. The first constant \( (c1) \) selects a variant from the variant part; the next constant, if any, selects a variant from the next (nested) variant part, and so on. It is an error if any other variants in those variant parts except the selected ones are made active in the identified variable. It is an error if the identified variable \( p\uparrow \) is used as a factor, as an actual variable parameter, or as the variable in an assignment statement (although components of \( p\uparrow \) may occur in those contexts).

Dispose(q) destroys the identifying value \( q \). It is an error if \( q \) is nil. The value \( q \) must have been created by the first (short) form of New, otherwise it is an error.
Dispose\((q, k_1, \ldots, k_n)\) destroys the identifying value \(q\). It is an error if \(q\) is nil. The value \(q\) must have been created by the second (long) form of \texttt{New} and the constants \(k_1, \ldots, k_n\) must select the same variants that were selected when the value was created, otherwise it is an error.

11.4.3. Data transfer procedures. Let \(U\) denote a non-packed array variable having type \(S_1\) as its index type and \(T\) as its component type. Let \(P\) denote a packed array variable having \(S_2\) as its index type and \(T\) as its component type. Let \(B\) and \(C\) denote the smallest and largest values of type \(S_2\). Let \(K\) denote a new variable (not otherwise accessible) possessing type \(S_1\) and let \(J\) denote a new variable possessing type \(S_2\). Let \(I\) be an expression that is compatible with \(S_1\).

\begin{align*}
\text{Pack}(U, I, P) \quad \text{is equivalent to the statement:} \\
\text{begin} \\
\quad K := I; \\
\quad \text{for } J := B \text{ to } C \text{ do begin} \\
\qquad P[J] := U[K]; \\
\qquad \text{if } J <> C \text{ then } K := \text{succ}(K) \\
\text{end} \\
\text{end}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{Unpack}(P, U, I) \quad \text{is equivalent to the statement:} \\
\text{begin} \\
\quad K := I; \\
\quad \text{for } J := B \text{ to } C \text{ do begin} \\
\qquad U[K] := P[J]; \\
\qquad \text{if } J <> C \text{ then } K := \text{succ}(K) \\
\text{end;} \\
\text{end}
\end{align*}

In each equivalence, \(P\) denotes one variable and \(U\) denotes one variable during all iterations of the for statement.

11.5. Predeclared Functions

11.5.1. Arithmetic functions. Let \(x\) be any real or integer expression. The result type of \texttt{abs} and \texttt{sqr} is the same as the type of \(x\). The result type of the other arithmetic functions is real.

\begin{align*}
\texttt{abs}(x) \quad &\text{yields the absolute value of } x. \\
\texttt{sqr}(x) \quad &\text{yields the square of } x. \quad \text{It is an error if the square does not exist in the implementation.}
\end{align*}
\(\sin(x)\) yields the sine of \(x\), where \(x\) is in radians.

\(\cos(x)\) yields the cosine of \(x\), where \(x\) is in radians.

\(\exp(x)\) yields the value of the base of natural logarithms raised to the power \(x\).

\(\ln(x)\) yields the natural logarithm of \(x\). It is an error if \(x\) is less than or equal to zero.

\(\sqrt{x}\) yields the square root of \(x\). It is an error if \(x\) is negative.

\(\arctan(x)\) yields the principal value, in radians, of the arctangent of \(x\).

11.5.2. Boolean functions. Let \(i\) be any integer expression, and let \(f\) denote any file variable. The result type of each Boolean function is Boolean.

\(\text{odd}(i)\) is equivalent to the expression \(i \mod 2 = 1\).

\(\text{eof}(f)\) is an error if \(f\) is undefined; otherwise, \(\text{eof}(f)\) yields true if \(f\) is in generation mode or if \(f\) is positioned past the last component in its sequence. If the parameter list is omitted, \(\text{eof}\) is applied to the program parameter Input.

\(\text{eoln}(f)\) is an error if \(f\) is undefined or if \(\text{eof}(f)\) is true. \(f\) must be a textfile. \(\text{eoln}(f)\) yields true if the current component of the sequence of \(f\) is an end-of-line marker. If the parameter list is omitted, \(\text{eoln}\) is applied to the program parameter Input.

11.5.3. Transfer functions. Let \(r\) denote a real expression. The result type of these functions is Integer.

\(\text{trunc}(r)\) yields a value such that if \(r \geq 0\) then \(0 \leq r - \text{trunc}(r) < 1\), and if \(r < 0\) then \(-1 < r - \text{trunc}(r) \leq 0\). It is an error if no such value exists.

\(\text{round}(r)\) yields a value such that if \(r \geq 0\) then \(\text{round}(r) = \text{trunc}(r + 0.5)\), and if \(r < 0\) then \(\text{round}(r) = \text{trunc}(r - 0.5)\). It is an error if no such value exists.

11.5.4 Ordinal functions. Let \(i\) be an integer expression, and let \(x\) be any ordinal expression.
ord(x) yields the ordinal number of x. chr(i) yields the value of type Char having ordinal number i. It is an error if no such value exists. If c denotes a character value then chr(ord(c)) = c is always true.

succ(x) yields the successor of x, if any exists, in which case ord(succ(x)) = ord(x) + 1. It is an error if no successor exists.

pred(x) yields the predecessor of x, if any exists, in which case ord(pred(x)) = ord(x) - 1. It is an error if no predecessor exists.

12. Textfile Input and Output

The basis for legible input and output are textfiles (see Section 6.2.4) that are passed as program parameters (see Section 13) to a Pascal program and that in the program's environment may represent some input or output devices such as a keyboard, display, a magnetic tape, or a line printer. In order to facilitate the handling of textfiles, three predeclared procedures (Readln, Writeln, and Page) are introduced, and two predeclared procedures (Read and Write — see Section 11.4.1) are extended. The textfiles that these procedures apply to need not represent input or output devices, but can also be local files. The actual parameter lists for these procedures do not conform to the usual rules (Section 11.3), allowing among other things for a variable number of parameters. Moreover, the parameters need not be of type Char, but also may be of certain other types in which case the data transfer is accompanied by an implicit data conversion operation. If the first parameter is a file variable, then this is the file to be read or written. Otherwise, the program parameter Input and Output (see Section 13) are assumed for reading and writing, respectively.

12.1 Read

When using Read on a textfile, the following rules apply. Let f denote a textfile, and let v1, ..., vn denote variables possessing type Char or Integer (or subrange of either) or Real.
(a) Read(v1, ..., vn) is equivalent to Read(g,v1, ..., vn), where g denotes the textfile program parameter Input.

(b) Read(f, v1, ..., vn) is equivalent to the statement

\[ \begin{array}{l}
\text{begin } \text{Read}(f,v1); \ldots ;\text{Read}(f,vn) \text{ end }
\end{array} \]

where all occurrences of \( f \) denote a single variable.

(c) Read(f,v) is an error if \( f \) is undefined or if \( f \) in not in inspection mode or if eof(f) is true. The effect of Read(f,v) depends on the type of v.

12.1.1. Char Read. Read(f,v), where \( v \) denotes a variable possessing a type that is compatible with type Char, is equivalent to assignment of a value to \( v \) followed by Get(f). The value assigned is either the character at the current position of \( f \) or the value of \( f^\dagger \), the choice being implementation–dependent. (These two values are the same except following explicit assignments to \( f^\dagger \).) If eoln(f) is true before Read(f,v), then the character at the current file position is ’ ’ (blank).

12.1.2. Integer Read. Read(f,v), where \( v \) denotes a variable possessing a type compatible with type Integer, implies the reading from \( f \) of a sequence of characters which form a SignedInteger (see Section 4) and the assignment of the denoted integer value to \( v \). The value must be assignment–compatible with the type of \( v \). Preceding spaces and end–of–line markers are skipped. It is an error if the signed integer is not found.

12.1.3. Real Read. Read(f,v), where \( v \) denotes a variable possessing the type Real, implies the reading from \( f \) of a sequence of characters which form a SignedNumber (see Section 4) and the assignment of the denoted real value to \( v \). Preceding spaces and end–of–line markers are skipped. It is an error if the signed number is not found.

12.2 Readln

Let \( f \) denote a textfile, and let v1, ..., vn denote variables of type Char or Integer (or subrange of either), or Real.

Readln(v1, ..., vn) is equivalent to Readln(g,v1, ..., vn), and

Readln is equivalent to Readln(g), where \( g \) denotes the textfile program parameter Input.

Readln(f,v1, ..., vn) is equivalent to the statement

\[ \begin{array}{l}
\text{begin } \text{Read}(f,v1,\ldots,vn); \text{Readln}(f) \text{ end }
\end{array} \]
where all occurrences of $f$ denote a single variable.

Readln ($f$) is equivalent to the statement

$$\text{begin}
\quad \text{while not eoln} (f) \text{ do } \text{ct} (f);
\quad \text{Get} (f)
\text{end}$$

where all occurrences of $f$ denote a single variable.

12.3. Write

When using Write on a textfile, the following rules apply. Let $f$ denote a textfile, $p,p_1,\ldots,p_n$ denote WriteParameters, $e$ denote an expression, and $m$ and $n$ denote integer expressions. The actual parameter list for Write must have the following syntax.

$$\text{WriteParameterList} = \langle (FileVariable | WriteParameter) \rangle \{ \langle \text{WriteParameter} \rangle \langle \text{WriteParameter} \rangle \} \rangle.$$  

WriteParameter = Expression [';'] IntegerExpression [';'] IntegerExpression

(a) Write($p_1,\ldots,p_n$) is equivalent to

Write($g,p_1,\ldots,p_n$).

where $g$ denotes the textfile program parameter Output.

(b) Write($f,p_1,\ldots,p_n$) is equivalent to the statement

$$\text{begin Write} (f,p_1) \ldots \text{Write} (f,p_n) \text{ end}$$

where all occurrences of $f$ denote a single variable.

(c) Write($f,p$) is an error if $f$ is undefined or not in generation mode.

(d) Each write parameter has one of the following forms:

$$e \quad e:m \quad e:n$$

$e$ represents the value to be “written” on $f$, and $m$ and $n$ are so-called field–width parameters. It is an error if either $m$ or $n$ is less than or equal to zero. The type of $e$ must be either Integer, Real, Char, Boolean, or a string type. The expression $n$ may occur only if $e$ is of type Real (see Section 12.3.3). If $n$ is omitted, a default value is assumed. The default value is implementation–defined if $e$ is of type Integer, Real, or Boolean. The default value for type Char is 1, and the default value for a string type is the number of components in the string.

If the representation of the value of $e$ requires fewer than $m$ characters, then it is preceded by an adequate number of spaces so that exactly $m$ characters are written.
The representation of the value of \( e \) depends on the type of \( e \).

12.3.1. **Char Write.** If \( e \) is of type Char, then Write\((f,e:m)\) is equivalent to the statement

```pascal
begin
  for J := 1 to m - 1 do Write(f,’ ’);
  fi := e; Put(f)
end
```

where all occurrences of \( f \) denote a single variable, and where \( J \) denotes a new (not otherwise accessible) integer variable.

12.3.2. **Integer Write.** If \( e \) is of type Integer, then Write\((f,e:m)\) writes a ‘-’ if \( e < 0 \), followed by the decimal representation of abs\((e)\). Preceding spaces are written if needed to write \( m \) characters.

12.3.3. **Real Write.** If \( e \) is of type Real, Write\((f,e:m:n)\) writes a fixed-point representation with \( n \) digits after the decimal point; and Write\((f,e:m)\) writes a floating-point representation. The operator “\(^*\)” means “raised to the power.”

12.3.3.1. **Fixed-point representation.** Let \( w \) be zero if \( e \) is zero, otherwise let \( w \) be the absolute value of \( e \) rounded and then truncated to \( n \) decimal places. Let \( d \) be 1 if \( w < 1 \), otherwise let \( 10^{(d-1)} <= w < 10^d \). \( d \) is the number of digits to the left of the decimal point. Let \( s = \text{ord}((e < 0) \text{ and } (w <> 0)) \). The representation is negative if \( s = 1 \). Let \( k = (s + d + 1 + n) \); \( k \) is the number of non-blank characters written.

If \( k < m \), then \( m-k \) preceding spaces are written. The fixed-point representation of \( e \) consists of \( k \) characters:

(a) ‘-’ if \( s = 1 \),
(b) the \( d \) decimal digits of the integer part of \( w \),
(c) ‘.’,
(d) the \( n \) most significant decimal digits of the fractional part of \( w \).

12.3.3.2. **Floating-point representation.** The number of digits that are to occur in the scale factor (“E part”) of the floating-point representation is implementation-defined; let \( x \) denote this number. Let \( k \) be the larger of \( m \) and \( x+6 \). The number of significant digits to be written is \( k-x-4 \), with one digit before the decimal point and \( d \) digits after (thus \( d = k-x-5 \)). Let \( w \) and \( s \) be zero if \( e \) is zero. If \( e \) is non-
zero, then let \( s \) be such that \( 10.0^* s \leq \text{abs}(e) < 10.0^{*(s+1)} \), and let \( w \) be \( \text{abs}(e)/10.0^* + 0.5 \times 10.0^*(-d) \). If \( w \geq 10.0 \) then \( w \) and \( s \) must be adjusted by \( s := s + 1 \) and \( w := w / 10.0 \). Finally, \( w \) is truncated to decimal places.

The floating-point representation of \( e \) consists of:

(a) either ‘-’ if \((e < 0) \text{ and } (w \neq 0)\) or else ‘’,

(b) the most significant decimal digit of \( w \),

(c) ‘.’,

(d) the \( d \) next-most-significant decimal digits of \( w \),

(e) either ‘e’ or ‘E’ (the choice being implementation-defined),

(f) ‘-’ if \( s < 0 \), otherwise ‘+’,

(g) \( x \) decimal digits of \( s \) with leading zeros if needed.

12.3.4. **Boolean Write.** If \( e \) is of type Boolean, then a representation of one of the words **true** or **false** is written by the statement \( \text{Write}(f, e : m) \), which is equivalent to the statement

\[
\text{if } e \text{ then Write}(f, 'true':m) \text{ else Write}(f, 'false':m)
\]

with the exception that the case of the letters written is implementation-defined.

12.3.5. **String Write.** If \( e \) possesses a string type of length \( k \), then \( \text{Write}(f, e : m) \) writes \( m - k \) spaces if \( m > k \), followed by the components of \( e \) having successive indices starting at 1 and ascending to either \( k \) or \( m \), whichever is less.

12.4. **Writeln**

Let \( f \) denote a textfile, and let \( p_1, \ldots, p_n \) denote write parameters.

\( \text{Writeln}(p_1, \ldots, p_n) \) is equivalent to \( \text{Writeln}(g, p_1, \ldots, p_n) \), and \( \text{Writeln} \) is equivalent to \( \text{Writeln}(g) \), where \( g \) denotes the textfile program parameter \( \text{Output} \).

\( \text{Writeln}(f, p_1, \ldots, p_n) \) is equivalent to the statement

\[
\text{begin Write}(f, p_1, \ldots, f); \text{Writeln}(f) \text{ end}
\]

where all occurrences of \( f \) denote a single variable.

\( \text{Writeln}(f) \) appends an end-of-line marker to the sequence of file \( f \). It is an error if \( f \) is undefined or if \( f \) is not in generation mode.
12.5. Page

Page(f) implies an implementation-defined effect on the textfile f, such that any text subsequently written to f will appear at the top of a new page when f is printed. If f is not empty, and the last component of its sequence is not an end-of-line marker, then Page(f) performs an implicit Writeln(f). If the parameter list is omitted, the textfile program parameter Output is assumed. It is an error if f is undefined or if f is not in generation mode.

The effect of reading a file variable to which Page was previously applied is implementation-dependent.

13. Programs

A Pascal program consists of a program heading and a block.

\[
\text{Program} = \text{ProgramHeading} \text{;" } \text{Block } \text{;" .}
\]

\[
\text{ProgramHeading} = \text{”program” Identifier } \text{[ ProgramParameterList ] .}
\]

\[
\text{ProgramParameterList} = \text{”(” IdentifierList ”")”.}
\]

The identifier following the symbol program is the program name; it has no further significance inside the program. Each identifier in the program parameter list is called a program parameter, and denotes an entity that exists outside the program and that, therefore, is called external. It is through its program parameters that the program communicates with its environment.

When a program is activated, each program parameter is bound to the external entity that it represents. For those program parameters that are file variables, the binding is implementation-defined; for all other program parameters, the binding is implementation-dependent.

Each program parameter, with the exception of Input and Output, must be declared in the variable declaration part of the program’s block. In the case of Input or Output, the occurrence of the identifier in the program parameter list has the effect of implicitly declaring the identifier in the program block to be a textfile, and implicitly performing a Reset(Input) or Rewrite(Output) at the commencement of each activation of the program.
The effect of applying \texttt{Reset} or \texttt{Rewrite} to either \texttt{Input} or \texttt{Output} is implementation-defined.

\textit{Examples of programs:}

\begin{verbatim}
program CopyReals(F,G : file of Real; R: Real; begin
  Reset(F); Rewrite(G;
  while not eof(F) do begin
    Read(F,R); Write( ,R)
  end
end { CopyReals } .

program CopyText(Input,Output); begin
  while not eof(Input) do begin
    while not eoln(Input) do begin
      Input\uparrow := Output'; Put(Output); Get(Input)
    end;
    Readln(Input); Writeln(Output)
  end
end { CopyText } .
\end{verbatim}

\section*{14. Compliance with ISO 7185}

A \textit{program} complies with the ISO Pascal standard [see Reference 11] if it uses only the features of the language that are defined by the standard and it does not rely on any particular interpretation of implementation-dependent features. The program is said to comply at level 0 if it does not make use of conformant array parameters, or at level 1 if it does.

A \textit{processor} is defined by the standard to be “a system or mechanism that accepts a program as input, prepares it for execution, and executes the process so defined with data to produce results.” A processor complies with the standard if it satisfies all of the following conditions.

(a) It accepts all features of the language as they are defined by the standard. It is said to comply at level 0 if it does not accept conformant array parameters, or at level 1 if it does.

(b) It does not require the use of substitute or additional language elements in order to accomplish a feature of the language.
(c) It is able to recognize violations of the standard that are not specifically called errors, reports such violations to the user, and prevents execution of the program.

(d) It handles each violation that is specifically called an error in one of the following ways.

1. It states in its documentation that the error is not reported.
2. It reports during program preparation that the error is possible or inevitable; in the presence of such a report, the processor is able to continue further processing and is able to refuse execution, at the user’s option.
3. It reports during program preparation that the error occurred; in the presence of such an error, the processor terminates execution. When an error occurs within a statement, the statement does not complete execution.

(e) It is able to process as an error any use of an extension or of an implementation–dependent feature.

(f) It is accompanied by a document that contains the following.

1. A definition of all implementation–defined features.
2. A section that describes all errors that are not reported (see d.1, above). If an extension makes use of a condition that is specified by the standard to be an error and thus the error is not reported, then the document must state that the error is not reported.
3. A section that describes all extensions supported by the implementation.
References


APPENDIX A

Predeclared Procedures and Functions

Abs(x)

an arithmetic function that computes the real absolute value of a real parameter x
or the integer absolute value of an integer parameter x.

ArcTan(x)

an arithmetic function that computes the real arctangent (principal value) in radians of a real or integer parameter x.

Chr(i)

a transfer function that returns the character whose ordinal number is the integer parameter i. Chr(i) is an error if such a character value does not exist.

Dispose(q)

a dynamic-allocation procedure that deallocates an identified variable q and destroys the identifying value q. Dispose(q) is an error if q is nil or undefined. The value q must have been created by the short form of New.

Dispose(q, kl,..., kn)

a dynamic-allocation procedure that deallocates an identified record variable q and destroys the identifying value q. Dispose(q, kl,..., kn) is an error if q is nil or undefined. The value q must have been created by the long form of New and kl,..., kn must select the same variants selected when q was created.

Eof(f)

a Boolean function that returns true if the file variable f is in generation mode, or if f is positioned past the last component in its sequence and f is in inspection mode. Eof(f) is an error if f is undefined. Otherwise Eof(f) returns false. If f is omitted, program parameter Input is assumed.

Eoln(f)

a Boolean function that returns true if the textfile f, when in inspection mode, is positioned at an end-of-line marker. Eoln(f) is an error if f is undefined or if Eof(f) is true. Otherwise Eoln(f) returns false. If f is omitted, program parameter Input is assumed.
Exp(x)  
an arithmetic function that computes the real value of e (the base of natural logarithms) raised to the real or integer parameter x.

Get(f)  
a file-handling procedure that causes the position in the sequence f to be advanced to the next component, if any, and f” to take on its value; if no next component exists eof(f) becomes true and f” becomes totally undefined. Get(f) is an error if f is undefined or eof(f) is true. If f is omitted, program parameter Input is assumed.

Ln(x)  
an arithmetic function that computes the real natural logarithm (to the base e) of the real or integer parameter x, where x > 0. Ln(x) is an error if x<=0.

New(p)  
a dynamic-allocation procedure that allocates a new identified (dynamic) variable p↑ having the domain type of p and creates a new identifying pointer value having the type possessed by p and assigns it to p. If p” is a variant record, New(p) allocates enough space to accommodate all variants.

New(p, c1, ..., cn)  
a dynamic-allocation procedure that allocates a new identified (dynamic) variable p↑ having the variant record type of p with tagfield values c1, ..., cn for n nested variant parts, and creates a new identifying pointer value having the type possessed by p and assigns it to p.

Odd(i)  
a Boolean function that returns true if the integer parameter i is not evenly divisible by 2; returns false otherwise.

Ord(x)  
a transfer function that returns the ordinal number (an integer) of the ordinal parameter x in the set of values defined by the type of x.

Pack(u, i, p)  
a data-transfer procedure that packs the contents of the non-packed array u starting at component i into the packed array p.

Page(f)  
a file-handling procedure that causes an implementation-defined effect on the textfile parameter f such that the next line subsequently written to f will appear at the top of a new page when f is printed. If f is not empty, and the last component of its sequence is not an end-of-line marker, then Page(f) performs an implicit Write(f). If the parameter list is omit
ted, the textfile program parameter Output is assumed. Page(f) is an error if f is undefined or if f is not in generation mode.

Pred(x)

a ordinal function that returns the previous ordinal value (predecessor) before the ordinal parameter x, if a predecessor exists: ord(pred(x)) = ord(x) - 1. Pred(x) is an error if x is the smallest value of its type.

Put(f)

a file-handling procedure that appends the value of f” to the end of the sequence of f. Put(f) is an error if f is undefined or is not in generation mode or if the buffer variable f” is undefined. Following Put(f), f” is totally undefined.

Read(f,v)


Read(f,v1,...,vn)


Readln


Readln(f,v1,...,vn)


Reset(f)

a file-handling procedure that places f in inspection mode and causes the position of f to become the first position. If f is empty, eof(f) becomes true and f” becomes totally undefined. Otherwise eof(f) becomes false and f” becomes the value of the first component of the sequence.

Rewrite(f)

a file-handling procedure that replaces f with the empty sequence and places f in generation mode. Eof(f) becomes true.

Round(r)

a transfer function that computes trunc(r + 0.5) for the real parameter r \geq 0.0, or trunc(r - 0.5) for the real parameter r < 0.0, if such a value exists in the type Integer. Otherwise it is an error.

Sin(x)

an arithmetic function that computes the real sine of a real or integer parameter x where x is in radians.
Sqr(x)  
an arithmetic function that computes the real value \( x \times x \) if \( x \) is real or the integer value \( x \times x \) if \( x \) is integer. It is an error if that value does not exist.

Sqrt(x)  
an arithmetic function that computes the real, non-negative square root of the integer or real parameter \( x \) where \( x \geq 0 \). Sqrt(x) is an error if \( x < 0 \).

Succ(x)  
an ordinal function that returns the next ordinal value (successor) after the ordinal parameter \( x \), if such a successor exists: \( \text{ord}(\text{succ}(x)) = \text{ord}(x) + 1 \). Succ(x) is an error if \( x \) is the largest value of its type.

Trunc(r)  
a transfer function that computes the greatest integer less than or equal to the real parameter \( r \) for \( r \geq 0.0 \), or the least integer greater than or equal to the real parameter \( r \), for \( r < 0.0 \) if such a value exists in the type Integer. Otherwise it is an error.

Unpack(p,u,i)  
a data-transfer function that unpacks the packed array \( p \) into the non-packed array \( u \) starting at element \( i \) in the non-packed array.

Write(f,v)  
See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Sections 11.4 and 12.3.

Write(f,v1,...,vn)  
See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Sections 11.4 and 12.3.

Writeln  
See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Section 12.4.

Writeln(f,e1,...,en)  
See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Section 12.4.
### Summary of Operators

#### Arithmetic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operands</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(unary) +</td>
<td>identity</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>same as operand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(unary) -</td>
<td>sign inversion</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>same as operand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>addition</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>subtraction</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>multiplication</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/</td>
<td>real division</td>
<td>Integer or Real</td>
<td>Real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>integer division</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod</td>
<td>modulus</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Relational

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operands</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>equality</td>
<td>simple, pointer,</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>set, or string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>inequality</td>
<td>simple, pointer,</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>set, or string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>less than</td>
<td>simple or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or equal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&lt;=</td>
<td>set inclusion</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=&gt;</td>
<td>greater than</td>
<td>simple or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or equal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;&gt;=</td>
<td>set inclusion</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>less than</td>
<td>simple or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>greater than</td>
<td>simple or string</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>set membership</td>
<td>ordinal and set</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Summary of Operators**

### Boolean

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operands</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>not</code></td>
<td>negation</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>and</code></td>
<td>conjunction</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>or</code></td>
<td>disjunction</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Set

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operands</th>
<th>Type of Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>+</code></td>
<td>set union</td>
<td>set of T</td>
<td>set of T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-</code></td>
<td>set difference</td>
<td>set of T</td>
<td>set of T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>*</code></td>
<td>set intersection</td>
<td>set of T</td>
<td>set of T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Operator Precedence in Expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>not</code></td>
<td>logical negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>* / div mod and</code></td>
<td>multiplying operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>+ - or</code></td>
<td>adding operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>= &lt;&gt; &gt; &lt; &gt;= &lt;= in</code></td>
<td>relational operators</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operand</th>
<th>Result Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>:=</code></td>
<td>assignment</td>
<td>any assignable type</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assignment

- `:=`: assignment, any assignable type, none

### Variable Accessing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operand</th>
<th>Result Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>[.]</code></td>
<td>array indexing</td>
<td>array</td>
<td>component type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>.</code></td>
<td>field selection</td>
<td>record</td>
<td>field type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>↑</code></td>
<td>identification</td>
<td>pointer</td>
<td>domain type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>↑</code></td>
<td>buffer accessing</td>
<td>file</td>
<td>component type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Construction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Type of Operand</th>
<th>Result Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>[.]</code></td>
<td>set construction</td>
<td>base type</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&quot;&quot;</code></td>
<td>string construction</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX C

Tables

Figure C.a. Complete Type Taxonomy of Data Types
Table of Standard Identifiers

Constants:

False, MaxInt, True

Types:

Boolean, Char, Integer, Real, Text

Variables:

Input, Output

Functions:

Abs, ArcTan, Chr, Cos, Eof, Eoln, Exp, Ln, Odd, Ord, Pred, Round, Sin, Sqr, Sqrt, Succ, Trunc

Procedures:

Dispose, Get, New, Pack, Page, Put, Read, Readln, Reset, Rewrite, Unpack, Write, Writeln

Alphabetical List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abs</th>
<th>False</th>
<th>Pack</th>
<th>Sin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ArcTan</td>
<td>Get</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Sqr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Input</td>
<td>Pred</td>
<td>Sqrt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Char</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Put</td>
<td>Succ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chr</td>
<td>Ln</td>
<td>Read</td>
<td>Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cos</td>
<td>MaxInt</td>
<td>Readln</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dispose</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Real</td>
<td>Trunc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eof</td>
<td>Odd</td>
<td>Reset</td>
<td>Unpack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eoln</td>
<td>Ord</td>
<td>Rewrite</td>
<td>Write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exp</td>
<td>Output</td>
<td>Round</td>
<td>Writeln</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table of Symbols

Special Symbols:

\[ + \quad - \quad * \quad / \quad = \]
\[ < \quad > \quad <= \quad >= \quad <> \]
\[ . \quad , \quad : \quad ; \quad := \quad .. \]
\[ ( \quad ) \quad [ \quad ] \quad \uparrow \]

Word Symbols (reserved words)

and \quad end \quad nil \quad set
array \quad file \quad not \quad then
begin \quad for \quad of \quad to
case \quad function \quad or \quad type
const \quad goto \quad packed \quad until
div \quad if \quad procedure \quad var
do \quad in \quad program \quad while
downto \quad label \quad record \quad with
else \quad mod \quad repeat

Alternative representations:

\[ ( \quad . \quad ) \quad \text{for [} \quad \text{for ]} \quad \text{for} \quad \text{for} \quad \text{for} \quad \text{for} \quad \text{for} \]

Directives

forward
APPENDIX D

Syntax

An Extended Backus–Naur Form (EBNF) specification of the syntax of a programming language consists of a collection of rules or productions collectively called a “grammar” that describe the formation of sentences in the language. Each production consists of a non–terminal symbol and an EBNF expression separated by an equal sign and terminated with a period. The non–terminal symbol is a “meta–identifier” (a syntactic constant denoted by an English word), and the EBNF expression is its definition.

The EBNF expression is composed of zero or more terminal symbols, non–terminal symbols, and other metasymbols summarized in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MetaSymbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>is defined to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>end of production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ X ]</td>
<td>0 or 1 instance of X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ X }</td>
<td>0 or more instances of X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( X</td>
<td>Y )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;XYZ&quot;</td>
<td>the terminal symbol XYZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meta–Identifier</td>
<td>the non–terminal symbol MetaIdentifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As an example, EBNF can be used to define its own syntax.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Syntax} & = \{ \text{Production} \} . \\
\text{Production} & = \text{NonTerminal} \ "=" \ \text{Expression} \ "." . \\
\text{Expression} & = \text{Term} \ [ "\text{" Term \ "} . \\
\text{Term} & = \text{Factor} \ [ \text{Factor} \} . \\
\text{Factor} & = \text{NonTerminal} \ \text{Terminal} \ [ "\text{" Expression \ "} )" \\
& \ "\text{" Expression \ "} \] "\text{" Expression \ "} )" . \\
\text{Terminal} & = ""\text{" Character} \ [ \text{Character} \ "" \". \\
\text{NonTerminal} & = \text{Letter} \ [ \text{Letter} \ \text{Digit} \} .
\end{align*}
\]
Notes:
1. A terminal symbol (literal) is always enclosed in quotation marks (""'); if a " itself is
enclosed, it is written twice. Thus in the Pascal EBNF below "['" and "]'" represent left
and right brackets in a Pascal program, whereas [ and ] are meta–symbols in an EBNF
expression that specify zero or one occurrence of whatever they enclose.
2. Every syntax has a start symbol, a meta–identifier from which all the sentences in
the language are generated and which is not used in any EBNF expression. The start
symbol for the Pascal syntax is Program.
3. Several meta–identifiers are “orphans” (e.g. SignedNumber) that are used in EBNF
and do not appear in this Appendix.
Collected EBNF, Hierarchical

1 Program = ProgramHeading ";; Block ".
2 ProgramHeading = "program" Identifier [ ProgramParameterList ].
3 ProgramParameterList = "(" IdentifierList ")".

7 Block = LabelDeclarationPart
8 ConstantDefinitionPart
9 TypeDefinitionPart
10 VariableDeclarationPart
11 ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart
12 StatementPart.
13 LabelDeclarationPart = [ "label" DigitSequence
14     [ "," DigitSequence ] ];
15 ConstantDefinitionPart = [ "const" ConstantDefinition ";";
16     { ConstantDefinition ";" } ];
17 TypeDefinitionPart = [ "type" TypeDefinition ";";
18     { TypeDefinition ";" } ];
19 VariableDeclarationPart = [ "var" VariableDeclaration ";";
20     { VariableDeclaration ";" } ];
21 ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart = [ ( ProcedureDeclaration |
22     FunctionDeclaration ) ";;" ] .
23 StatementPart = CompoundStatement .
26 ConstantDefinition = Identifier "=" Constant .
27 TypeDefinition = Identifier "=" Type .
28 VariableDeclaration = IdentifierList ";" Type .
29 ProcedureDeclaration = ProcedureHeading ";;" Block |
30     ProcedureHeading ";;" Directive |
31     ProcedureIdentification ";;" Block .
32 FunctionDeclaration = FunctionHeading ";;" Block |
33     FunctionHeading ";;" Directive |
34     FunctionIdentification ";;" Block .
Appendix D

38 ProcedureHeading = "procedure" Identifier [ FormalParameterList ].
39 ProcedureIdentification = "procedure" ProcedureIdentifier.
40 FunctionHeading = "function" Identifier [ FormalParameterList ]
41 "::" ResultType.
42 FunctionIdentification = "function" FunctionIdentifier.
43 FormalParameterList = "(" FormalParameterSection
44 [ "::" FormalParameterSection ] ")."
45 FormalParameterSection = ValueParameterSpecification |
46 VariableParameterSpecification |
47 ProceduralParameterSpecification |
48 FunctionalParameterSpecification.
49
50--------------------------------------
51
52 ValueParameterSpecification =
53 IdentifierList "::" ( Typedefentifier |
54 ConformantArraySchema ).
55 VariableParameterSpecification =
56 "var" IdentifierList "::" ( Typedefentifier |
57 ConformantArraySchema ).
58 ProceduralParameterSpecification =
59 ProcedureHeading.
60 FunctionalParameterSpecification =
61 FunctionHeading.
62 ConformantArraySchema = PackedConformantArraySchema |
63 UnpackedConformantArraySchema.
64 PackedConformantArraySchema =
65 "packed array" [ " IndexTypeSpecification "]" |
66 "of" Typedefentifier.
67 UnpackedConformantArraySchema =
68 "array" [ " IndexTypeSpecification [ "::" |
69 IndexTypeSpecification ] "::" "of" |
70 ( Typedefentifier | ConformantArraySchema ).
71 IndexTypeSpecification = Identifier ".." Identifier "::"
72 OrdinalTypedefidentifier.
73
74
75 CompoundStatement = "begin" |
76 StatementSequence |
77 "end" |
78 StatementSequence = Statement [ "::" Statement ].
79 Statement = [ Label "::" ] |
80 ( SimpleStatement | StructuredStatement ).
81 SimpleStatement = EmptyStatement | AssignmentStatement |
82 ProcedureStatement | GotoStatement.
ConditionalStatement = IfStatement | CaseStatement.
RepetitiveStatement = WhileStatement | RepeatStatement | ForStatement.
EmptyStatement = .
AssignmentStatement = (Variable | FunctionIdentifier) "::=" Expression.
GotoStatement = "goto" Label.
IfStatement = "if" BooleanExpression "then" Statement ["else" Statement].
CaseStatement = "case" CaseIndex "of" Case {[ ";" Case ] [ ";;" ] "end"}.
RepeatStatement = "repeat" StatementSequence "until" BooleanExpression.
WhileStatement = "while" BooleanExpression "do" Statement.
ForStatement = "for" ControlVariable ":=" InitialValue ("to" | "downto") FinalValue "do" Statement.
WithStatement = "with" RecordVariableList "do" Statement.
RecordVariableList = RecordVariable { "," RecordVariable }.
CaseIndex = OrdinalExpression.
Case = Constant { "," Constant } ":=" Statement.
ControlVariable = VariableIdentifier.
InitialValue = OrdinalExpression.
FinalValue = OrdinalExpression.

Type = SimpleType | StructuredType | PointerType.
SimpleType = OrdinalType | RealTypeldentifier.
StructuredType = ["packed"] UnpackedStructuredType | StructuredTypeldentifier.
PointerType = "^" DomainType | PointerTypeldentifier.
OrdinalType = EnumeratedType | SubrangeType | OrdinalTypeldentifier.
UnpackedStructuredType = ArrayType | RecordType | SetType | FileType.
DomainType = Typeldentifier.
EnumeratedType = (" IdentifierList ")
SubrangeType = Constant "..." Constant.

ArrayType = "arr" "[" IndexType ["," IndexType ] "]" "of" ComponentType.

RecordType = "record"

FieldList

"end"

SetType = "set" [" BaseType.

FileType = "file" "f" ComponentType.

IndexType = OrdinType.

ComponentType = Type.

BaseType = OrdinType.

ResultType = OrdinType | RealType | PointerType.

FieldList = [ (FixedPart [";" VariantPart] | VariantPart ) ["," ] ].

FixedPart = RecordSection [";" RecordSection ].

VariantPart = "case" VariantSelector "of"

Variant

[ ";" Variant ].

RecordSection = IdentifierList ":" Type.

VariantSelector = [ TagField ";" ] TagType.

Variant = Constant [";" Constant ] [ ";" "(" FieldList ")" ].

TagType = OrdinType.

TagField = Identifier.

Constant = [ Sign | (UnsignedNumber | ConstantIdentifier) ] CharacterString.

Expression = SimpleExpression [ RelationalOperator SimpleExpression ].

SimpleExpression = [ Sign | Term | AddingOperator Term ].

Term = Factor [ MultiplyingOperator Factor ].

Factor = UnsignedConstant | BoundIdentifier | Variable """" Factor ["(" Expression ")" ].

RelationalOperator = ["=" | ">" | ">" | ">=" | ">=" ].

AddingOperator = ["+" | "-" | "or" ].

MultiplyingOperator = ["*" | "/" | "div" | "mod" | "and" ].

UnsignedConstant = UnsignedNumber | CharacterString.

FunctionDesignator = FunctionIdentifier [ ActualParameterList ].
175
176 Variable = EntireVariable | ComponentVariable | IdentifiedVariable | BufferVariable.
177
178 EntireVariable = VariableIdentifier.
179 ComponentVariable = IndexedVariable | FieldDesignator.
180 IdentifiedVariable = PointerVariable “↑”.
181 BufferVariable = FileVariable “↑”.
182 IndexedVariable = ArrayVariable “[” Index { “,” Index } “]”.
183 FieldDesignator = [ RecordVariable “.” ] FieldIdentifier.
184 SetConstructor = “[” { ElementDescription
185 = OrdinalExpression [ “..” OrdinalExpression ].
186 ElementDescription = OrdinalExpression [ “.” OrdinalExpression ].
187 ActualParameterList = “(” ActualParameter
188 = Expression | Variable | ProcedureIdentifier
189 ActualParameter = Expression | Variable | ProcedureIdentifier
190 | FunctionIdentifier.
191 WriteParameterList = “(” ( FileVariable | WriteParameter )
192 = “,” WriteParameter “)”).
193 WriteParameter = Expression [ “:” IntegerExpression
194 = IntegerExpression ].
195 ArrayVariable = Variable.
196 RecordVariable = Variable.
197 FileVariable = Variable.
198 PointerVariable = Variable.
199 IntegerExpression = OrdinalExpression.
200 BooleanExpression = OrdinalExpression.
201 Index = OrdinalExpression.
202 OrdinalExpression = Expression.
203
204 PointerTypeldentifier = Typeldentifier.
205 StructuredTypeldentifier = Typeldentifier.
206 OrdinalTypeldentifier = Typeldentifier.
207 RealTypeldentifier = Typeldentifier.
208 ConstantIdentifier = Identifier.
209 Typeldentifier = Identifier.
210 VariableIdentifier = Identifier.
211 FieldIdentifier = Identifier.
212 ProcedureIdentifier = Identifier.
213 FunctionIdentifier = Identifier.
214 BoundIdentifier = Identifier.
215
216 UnsignedNumber = UnsignedInteger | UnsignedReal.
217 IdentifierList = Identifier { “,” Identifier }.
218
219
220 Syntax 219
Identifier = Letter \{ Letter | Digit \}.
Directive = Letter \{ Letter | Digit \}.
Label = DigitSequence.
UnsignedInteger = DigitSequence.
UnsignedReal = DigitSequence \( \cdot \) DigitSequence \{ \text{"e"} \} | ScaleFactor \} | DigitSequence \{ \text{"e"} \} ScaleFactor.
ScaleFactor = [ Sign \} DigitSequence.
Sign = \{ \text{"+"} | \"-" \}.
CharacterString = \{ \text{""} \} StringElement \{ StringElement \} \{ \text{""} \}.
DigitSequence = Digit \{ Digit \}.
Letter = \{ \text{"a"} | \text{"b"} | \text{"c"} | \text{"d"} | \text{"e"} | \text{"f"} | \text{"g"} | \text{"h"} | \text{"i"} | \text{"j"} | \text{"k"} | \text{"l"} | \text{"m"} | \text{"n"} | \text{"o"} | \text{"p"} | \text{"q"} | \text{"r"} | \text{"s"} | \text{"t"} | \text{"u"} | \text{"v"} | \text{"w"} | \text{"x"} | \text{"y"} | \text{"z"} \}.
Digit = \{ \text{"0"} | \text{"1"} | \text{"2"} | \text{"3"} | \text{"4"} | \text{"5"} | \text{"6"} | \text{"7"} | \text{"8"} | \text{"9"} \}.
StringElement = \{ \text{"\'\'\'} \} AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe.

220 Appendix D
221
222
223 Identifier = Letter \{ Letter | Digit \}.
224 Directive = Letter \{ Letter | Digit \}.
225 Label = DigitSequence.
226 UnsignedInteger = DigitSequence.
227 UnsignedReal = DigitSequence \{ \text{"e"} \} DigitSequence \{ \text{"e"} \} ScaleFactor.
228 ScaleFactor = [ Sign \} DigitSequence.
229 Sign = \{ \text{"+"} | \"-" \}.
230 CharacterString = \{ \text{"\'\'\'\'} \} StringElement \{ StringElement \} \{ \text{"\'\'\'\'} \}.
231 DigitSequence = Digit \{ Digit \}.
232 Letter = \{ \text{"a"} | \text{"b"} | \text{"c"} | \text{"d"} | \text{"e"} | \text{"f"} | \text{"g"} | \text{"h"} | \text{"i"} | \text{"j"} | \text{"k"} | \text{"l"} | \text{"m"} | \text{"n"} | \text{"o"} | \text{"p"} | \text{"q"} | \text{"r"} | \text{"s"} | \text{"t"} | \text{"u"} | \text{"v"} | \text{"w"} | \text{"x"} | \text{"y"} | \text{"z"} \}.
233 Digit = \{ \text{"0"} | \text{"1"} | \text{"2"} | \text{"3"} | \text{"4"} | \text{"5"} | \text{"6"} | \text{"7"} | \text{"8"} | \text{"9"} \}.
234 StringElement = \{ \text{"\'\'\'\'} \} AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe.
## Cross Reference of EBNF

### Indexed to Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Meta-Identifier</th>
<th>EBNF Cross Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11.3.2.</td>
<td><code>ActualParameter</code></td>
<td>187 188 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3.2.</td>
<td><code>ActualParameterList</code></td>
<td>92 174 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td><code>AddingOperator</code></td>
<td>164 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><code>AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe</code></td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1.</td>
<td><code>ArrayCharacterExceptApostrophe</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.1.</td>
<td><code>ArrayType</code></td>
<td>125 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.1.</td>
<td><code>AssignmentStatement</code></td>
<td>81 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.3.</td>
<td><code>BaseType</code></td>
<td>136 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1.</td>
<td><code>Block</code></td>
<td>1 7 29 31 32 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td><code>BooleanExpression</code></td>
<td>95 102 103 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3.1.1.</td>
<td><code>BoundIdentifier</code></td>
<td>166 215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.</td>
<td><code>BufferVariable</code></td>
<td>177 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.2.2.</td>
<td><code>Case</code></td>
<td>98 98 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.2.2.</td>
<td><code>CaseIndex</code></td>
<td>97 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.2.2.</td>
<td><code>CaseStatement</code></td>
<td>85 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><code>CharacterString</code></td>
<td>158 172 231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1.</td>
<td><code>ComponentType</code></td>
<td>132 137 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.</td>
<td><code>ComponentVariable</code></td>
<td>176 179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1.</td>
<td><code>CompoundStatement</code></td>
<td>23 75 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.2.</td>
<td><code>ConditionalStatement</code></td>
<td>83 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3.1.1.</td>
<td><code>ConformantArraySchema</code></td>
<td>54 57 62 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td><code>Constant</code></td>
<td>26 111 111 129 129 151 151 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td><code>ConstantDefinition</code></td>
<td>15 16 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td><code>ConstantDefinitionPart</code></td>
<td>8 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td><code>ConstantIdentifier</code></td>
<td>157 173 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.3.</td>
<td><code>ControlVariable</code></td>
<td>105 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><code>Digit</code></td>
<td>223 224 232 232 238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><code>DigitSequence</code></td>
<td>13 14 225 226 227 228 229 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><code>Directive</code></td>
<td>30 33 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.</td>
<td><code>DomainType</code></td>
<td>122 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td><code>ElementDescription</code></td>
<td>184 185 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.</td>
<td><code>EmptyStatement</code></td>
<td>81 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.</td>
<td><code>EntireVariable</code></td>
<td>176 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.1.</td>
<td><code>EnumeratedType</code></td>
<td>123 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td><code>Expression</code></td>
<td>91 162 168 189 193 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td><code>Factor</code></td>
<td>165 165 166 168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.</td>
<td><code>FieldDesignator</code></td>
<td>179 183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2.</td>
<td><code>FieldIdentifier</code></td>
<td>183 212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2.</td>
<td><code>FieldList</code></td>
<td>134 143 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.4.</td>
<td>FileType</td>
<td>126,137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.</td>
<td>FileVariable</td>
<td>181,191,197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.3.</td>
<td>FinalValue</td>
<td>106,114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2.</td>
<td>FixedPart</td>
<td>143,145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.3.</td>
<td>ForStatement</td>
<td>87,105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3.1.</td>
<td>FormalParameterList</td>
<td>117,118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3.1.</td>
<td>FormalParameterSection</td>
<td>83,87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2.</td>
<td>FunctionDeclaration</td>
<td>32,33,40,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2.</td>
<td>FunctionIdentification</td>
<td>34,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2.</td>
<td>FunctionIdentifier</td>
<td>42,90,174,190,214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3.1.2.</td>
<td>FunctionParameterSpecification</td>
<td>48,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.3.</td>
<td>GotoStatement</td>
<td>82,94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.</td>
<td>IdentifiedVariable</td>
<td>177,180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>181,191,197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3.1.1.</td>
<td>PackedConformantArraySpecification</td>
<td>47,58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.</td>
<td>ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart</td>
<td>11,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.</td>
<td>ProcedureDeclaration</td>
<td>21,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.</td>
<td>ProcedureHeading</td>
<td>29,30,38,59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.</td>
<td>ProcedureIdentification</td>
<td>31,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.</td>
<td>ProcedureIdentifier</td>
<td>39,92,189,213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.2.</td>
<td>ProcedureStatement</td>
<td>82,92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Program</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. ProgramHeading
   1 2
13. ProgramParameterList
   2 3
6.1. RealTypeIdentifier
   119 141 208
6.2.2. RecordSection
   145 145 149
6.2.2. RecordType
   125 133
7.2.2. RecordVariable
   109 109 183 196
9.2.4. RecordVariableList
   107 109
8. RelationalOperator
   162 169
9.2.3.2. RepeatStatement
   86 100
9.2.3. RepetitiveStatement
   84 86
11.2 ResultType
   41 141
4. ScaleFactor
   228 228 229
8. SetConstructor
   167 184
6.2.3. SetType
   125 136
4. Sign
   157 164 229 230
8. SimpleExpression
   162 163 164
9.1. SimpleStatement
   80 81
6.1. SimpleType
   118 119
9. Statement
   78 78 79 95 96 104
     106 108 111
9. StatementPart
   12 23
9.2. StatementSequence
   76 78 101
4. StringElement
   231 231 240
9.2. StructuredStatement
   80 83
6.2 StructuredType
   118 120
6.2. StructuredTypeIDentifier
   121 206
6.1.3. SubrangeType
   123 129
6.2.2. TagField
   150 153
8. Term
   164 164 165
6. Type
   27 28 118 139 149
6. TypeDefinition
   17 18 27
6. TypeDefinitionPart
   9 17
6. TypeIdentifier
   53 56 66 70 127 205
     206 207 208 210
11.3.1.1. UnpackedConformantArraySchema
   63 67
6.2. UnpackedStructuredType
   120 125
8. UnsignedConstant
   166 172
4. UnsignedInteger
   218 226
4. UnsignedNumber
   157 172 218
4. UnsignedReal
   218 227
11.2.1.1. ValueParameterSpecification
   45 52
7. Variable
   90 166 176 189 195 196
     197 198
7. VariableDeclaration
   19 20 28
7. VariableDeclarationPart
   10 19
7. VariableIdentifier
   112 178 211
11.3.1.1. VariableParameterSpecification 46 55
6.2.2. Variant 147 148 151
6.2.2. VariantPart 143 143 146
6.2.2. VariantSelector 146 150
9.2.3.1. WhileStatement 86 103
9.2.4. WithStatement 84 107
12.3. WriteParameter 191 192 193
12.3. WriteParameterList 93 191

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word Symbol</th>
<th>EBNF Cross Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array</td>
<td>65 68 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>97 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>103 106 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downto</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>else</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>77 99 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>function</td>
<td>40 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goto</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>label</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nil</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>66 69 97 132 136 137 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packed</td>
<td>65 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procedure</td>
<td>38 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>program</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>record</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repeat</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>then</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var</td>
<td>19 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Collected EBNF, Alphabetical

ActualParameter = Expression | Variable | ProcedureIdentifier 
                  | FunctionIdentifier.
ActualParameterList = ("ActualParameter {"," ActualParameter } ")
AddingOperator = "+" | "-" | "or".
ArrayType = "array" "[" IndexType { "," IndexType } "]" "of" 
            ComponentType.
ArrayVariable = Variable.
AssignmentStatement = (Variable | FunctionIdentifier) "+=" Expression.
BaseType = OrdinalType.
Block = LabelDeclarationPart 
        ConstantDefinitionPart 
        TypeDefinitionPart 
        VariableDeclarationPart 
        StatementPart.
BooleanExpression = OrdinalExpression.
BoundIdentifier = Identifier.
BufferVariable = FileVariable "+".
Case = Constant { "," Constant } "+" Statement.
CaseIndex = OrdinalExpression.
CaseStatement = "case" CaseIndex "+"of" 
                Case { ";" Case } [ ";" ] 
                "end".
CharacterString = "’" StringElement { StringElement } "’".
ComponentType = Type.
ComponentVariable = IndexedVariable | FieldDesignator.
CompoundStatement = "begin"
                    StatementSequence
                    "end".
ConditionalStatement = IfStatement | CaseStatement.
ConformantArraySchema = PackedConformantArraySchema | 
                        UnpackedConformantArraySchema.
Constant = [ Sign | (UnsignedNumber | ConstantIdentifier) 
             / CharacterString.
ConstantDefinition = Identifier "+" Constant.
ConstantDefinitionPart = [ "const" ConstantDefinition "+";" 
                          { ConstantDefinition "+";" } ] .
ConstantIdentifier = Identifier.
ControlVariable = VariableIdentifier.
Digit = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9".
DigitSequence = Digit | Digit ].
DomainType = TypeIdentifier.
ElementDescription = OrdinalExpression [ ".." OrdinalExpression ].
EmptyStatement = .
EntireVariable = VariableIdentifier.
EnumeratedType = ("IdentifierList ").
Expression = SimpleExpression | RelationalOperator
SimpleExpression.
Factor = UnsignedConstant | BoundIdentifier | Variable
SetConstructor | FunctionDesignator | "not" Factor | "(" Expression ")".
FieldDesignator = RecordVariable [,.] FieldIdentifier.
FieldIdentifier = Identifier.
FieldList = ( FixedPart [";" VariantPart ] | VariantPart )
[ ".." ].
FileType = "file" of ComponentType.
FileVariable = Variable.
FinalValue = OrdinalExpression.
FixedPart = RecordSection [ ";" RecordSection ].
ForStatement = "for" ControlVariable := InitialValue
("to" | "downto") FinalValue "do" Statement.
FormalParameterList = ("FormalParameterSection
[ ";" FormalParameterSection ] ").
FunctionDeclaration = FunctionHeading :";" Block | FunctionHeading :";" Directive | FunctionIdentification :";" Block.
FunctionDesignator = FunctionIdentifier [ ActualParameterList ].
FunctionHeading = "func" Identifier [ FormalParameterList ]
[ ";" ResultType ].
FunctionIdentification = "func" FunctionIdentifier.
FunctionIdentifier = Identifier.
FunctionalParameterSpecification =
FunctionHeading.
GotoStatement = "goto" Label.
IdentifiedVariable = PointerVariable "=>".
Identifier = Letter \{ Letter | Digit \}.
IdentifierList = Identifier \{ \, “.” | Identifier \}.
IfStatement = “if” BooleanExpression “then” Statement
               \{ “else” Statement \}.
Index = OrdinalExpression.
IndexType = OrdinalType.
IndexTypeSpecification = Identifier “..” Identifier “:”
                       OrdinalTypelIdentifier.
IndexedVariable = ArrayVariable \{ “.” | Index \{ “,” | Index \} “\}”.
InitialValue = OrdinalExpression.
IntegerExpression = OrdinalExpression.
Label = DigitSequence.
LabelDeclarationPart = \{ “label” DigitSequence
                       \{ “.” | DigitSequence \} “:” \}.
Letter = “a” | “b” | “c” | “d” | “e” | “f” | “g” | “h” | “i” | “j” | “k” | “l” | “m” | “n” | “o” | “p” | “q” | “r” | “s” | “t” | “u” | “v” | “w” | “x” | “y” | “z” | “\*” | “/” | “\div” | “\mod” | “\and”.
MultiplyingOperator = “\*” | “/” | “\div” | “\mod” | “\and”.
OrdinalExpression = Expression.
OrdinalType = EnumeratedType | SubrangeType |
              OrdinalTypelIdentifier.
OrdinalTypelIdentifier = TypelIdentifier.
PackedConformantArraySchema =
                              “packed” "array" \{ \[ IndexTypeSpecification \] \}
                              "of" TypelIdentifier.
PointerType = “↑” DomainType | PointerTypelIdentifier.
PointerTypelIdentifier = TypelIdentifier.
PointerVariable = Variable.
ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart = \{ ( ProcedureDeclaration |
                                         FunctionDeclaration ) \} “;” ”.
ProcedureDeclaration = ProcedureHeading “;” Block |
                       ProcedureHeading “;” Directive |
                       ProcedureIdentification “;” Block.
ProcedureHeading = “procedure” Identifier \{ FormalParameterList \}.
ProcedureIdentification = “procedure” ProcedureIdentifier.
ProcedureIdentifier = Identifier.
ProcedureStatement = ProcedureIdentifier \{ ActualParameterList
                                \| WriteParameterList \}.
Program = ProgramHeading “;” Block “.”.
ProgramHeading = “program” Identifier \{ ProgramParameterList \}.
ProgramParameterList = \{ (“IdentifierList” \} “)”. 
RealTypelIdentifier = TypelIdentifier.
RecordSection = IdentifierList “;” Type.
RecordType
  = "record"
  FieldList
  "end".
RecordVariable
  = Variable.
RecordVariableList
  = RecordVariable \{ ",” RecordVariable \}.
RelationalOperator
  = "=" | "<" | "<=" | "">" | ">=" | "in".
RepeatStatement
  = "repeat"
  StatementSequence
  "until" BooleanExpression.
RepetitiveStatement
  = WhileStatement \| RepeatStatement \| ForStatement.
ResultType
  = OrdinalTypeIdentifier \| RealTypeIdentifier
  \| PointerTypeIdentifier.
ScaleFactor
  = \[ Sign \| DigitSequence \].
SetConstructor
  = \[ "[" ElementDescription
  "]" \].
SetType
  = "set" \"of\" BaseType.
Sign
  = "+" | "-".
SimpleExpression
  = \[ Sign \| Term \{ AddingOperator Term \} \].
SimpleStatement
  = EmptyStatement \| AssignmentStatement
  \| ProcedureStatement \| GotoStatement.
SimpleType
  = OrdinalType \| RealTypeIdentifier.
Statement
  = \[ Label:";" \]
  \( ( SimpleStatement \| StructuredStatement ) \).
StatementPart
  = CompoundStatement.
StatementSequence
  = Statement \{ ";" Statement \}.
StringElement
  = "" \( AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe \).
StructuredStatement
  = CompoundStatement \| ConditionalStatement
  \| RepetitiveStatement \| WithStatement.
StructuredType
  = \[ "packed" \] UnpackedStructuredType \| StructuredTypeIdentifier.
StructuredTypeIdentifier
  = TypeIdentifier.
SubrangeType
  = Constant ".." Constant.
TagField
  = Identifier.
TagType
  = OrdinalTypeIdentifier.
Term
  = Factor \{ MultiplyingOperator Factor \}.
Type
  = SimpleType \| StructuredType \| PointerType.
TypeDefinition
  = Identifier "=" Type.
TypeDefinitionPart
  = \[ "type" TypeDefinition ";" \]
  \( \{ TypeDefinition ";" \} \].
TypeIdentifier
  = Identifier.
UnpackedConformantArraySchema
  = "array" 
  \[ "[" IndexTypeSpecification \{ ",” IndexTypeSpecification \} 
  "]" 
  \"of\" ( TypeIdentifier \| ConformantArraySchema ).
UnpackedStructuredType = ArrayType \ RecordType \ SetType \ FileType .
UnsignedConstant = UnsignedNumber \ CharacterString \ ConstantIdentifier \ "nil" .
UnsignedInteger = DigitSequence .
UnsignedNumber = UnsignedInteger \ UnsignedReal .
UnsignedReal = DigitSequence \ DigitSequence \ "e" \ ScaleFactor \ DigitSequence \ "e" \ ScaleFactor .
ValueParameterSpecification = IdentifierList \ Constant \ Type .
Variable = EntireVariable \ ComponentVariable \ IdentifiedVariable \ BufferVariable .
VariableDeclaration = IdentifierList \ Type .
VariableDeclarationPart = [ \ "var" \ VariableDeclaration \ ;" ]
VariableIdentifier = Identifier .
VariableParameterSpecification = \ [ \ "var" \ IdentifierList \ Constant \ Type \ ConformantArraySchema ] .
Variant = Constant \ \ "( FieldList \ "\)" .
VariantPart = \ "case" \ VariantSelector \ of
VariantSelector = \ [ \ TagField \ "\] \ TagType .
WhileStatement = \ "while" \ BooleanExpression \ "do" \ Statement .
WithStatement = \ "with" \ RecordVariableList \ "do" \ Statement .
WriteParameter = Expression \ [ \ "\ IntegerExpression \ "\ IntegerExpression \ ] .
WriteParameterList = \ ( \ FileVariable \ \ WriteParameter \ ) \ [ \ "\ WriteParameter \ ] \ "\)" .
Syntax Diagrams

The diagrams for *Letter, Digit, Identifier, Directive, UnsignedInteger, UnsignedNumber*, and *CharacterString* describe the formation of lexical symbols from characters. The other diagrams described the formation of syntactic constructions from symbols.

*Letter*

![Diagram of letter symbols]

*Digit*

![Diagram of digit symbols]
**Identifier and Directive**

![Diagram of Identifier and Directive]

**UnsignedInteger and DigitSequence**

![Diagram of UnsignedInteger and DigitSequence]

**UnsignedNumber**

![Diagram of UnsignedNumber]

**CharacterString**

![Diagram of CharacterString]

**ConstantIdentifier, VariableIdentifier, FieldIdentifier, BoundIdentifier, TypeIdentifier, ProcedureIdentifier and FunctionIdentifier**

![Diagram of Identifier]
UnsignedConstant

Constant

Variable
Expression

ActualParameterList

WriteParameterList
Syntax 235

IndexTypeSpecification

ConformantArraySchema

FormalParameterList
ProcedureOrFunctionHeading

- procedure
- Identifier
- FormalParameterList
- function
- Identifier
- FormalParameterList
- : Typeldentifier

OrdinalType

- Typeldentifier
- ( Identifier )
- Constant
- .

Type

- OrdinalType
- Typeldentifier
- packed
- array
- [ OrdinalType ]
- of
- Type
- file
- set
- record
- FieldList
- end
FieldList

Identifier : Type

case

Identifier : Typelentifier of : ;

, Constant : ( FieldList ) : ;
Statement

- **UnsignedInteger**
- **Variable**
- **FunctionIdentifier**
- **ProcedureIdentifier**
- **ActualParameterList**
- **WriteParameterList**
- **begin**
- **end**
- **if**
- **then**
- **else**
- **case**
- **of**
- **Constant**
- **while**
- **do**
- **repeat**
- **until**
- **for**
- **VariableIdentifier**
- **with**
- **goto**
- **Expression**
- **Statement**
APPENDIX E

Summary of Changes to
Pascal User Manual and Report
Necessitated by the ISO 7185 Standard

This appendix merely gives a non-exhaustive overview of the technical changes made to this book as it was being revised for the third (ISO Standard) edition. The summary should be useful to owners of previous editions.

Report 3: Notation and Terminology
Use of EBNF instead of BNF.
Definitions of error, implementation-defined, implementation-dependent, extension, and Standard Pascal provided and used throughout Report.

Report 4: Symbols and Symbol Separators
Change in formulation of syntax from delimiters to separators.
Inclusion of symbol “..”.
Alternative representations for special symbols “[”, “]”, and “↑”.
Change in comment syntax; nested comments not allowed.
Identifier spelling now significant over whole length.
New symbol category: directives.

Report 5: Constants
MaxInt now included in Report

Report 6: Types
Scalar types are replaced by ordinal and real types;
   definitions of succ, pred, and ord, array indexing case selection, subranges, and set base types thereby simplified.
Type compatibility now defined as “name compatibility.”
Concepts of assignment compatibility and assignable types introduced.
Specific semantic implications for packed structured types.
Consecutive “;,” not permitted.
Case labels in record variants now called case constants.
Full specification of variant parts required in record types.
Inspection and generation modes specified for file types.
Type text no longer equivalent to (packed) file of char.
File types or types containing file types (i.e., non-assignable types) not allowed as component types of file types.
Domain types introduced for pointer types.

240
Report 7: Variables
Concept of undefined and totally undefined variables introduced.
Input and Output now implicitly declared, textfile, program parameters if used.

Report 8: Expressions
Factor now includes conformant–array parameter bound identifier.
Order of evaluation of expressions specified as implementation–dependent.
Definition of mod operator changed.
Type of a set constructor now both packed and non–packed.

Report 9: Statements
Rules enforced regarding the accessibility of labels by gotos.
Case statement labels now called case constants.
The control variable of a for statement now a local variable only.
Several restrictions added to the for statement and its actions rigorously defined.

Report 10: Blocks, Scope, and Activations
The concepts of a program–point, activation–point, scope of the definition or declaration (introduction) of labels and identifiers defined.
Scope rules defined precisely to eliminate ambiguity.
The apparent integral value of labels greater than 9999 not allowed.
Activation rules defined; binding of identifiers to variables, procedures, and functions defined.

Report 11: Procedures and Functions
Procedure and function directives are introduced; forward now a standard directive.
Conformant–array parameters added; the concept of conformability and conformant type introduced.
Full specification of the parameter lists now required of formal procedural and functional parameters (procedures and functions as parameters); the concept of parameter–list congruency introduced.
Use of tag fields as actual variable parameters disallowed.
Specification of the array parameters to pack and unpack changed.
File–handling procedures and functions and the state of the file variable and buffer variable now rigorously defined.

Report 12: Textfile Input and Output
Procedure page standard; its file parameter optional; its actions changed.
Special WriteParameterList syntax added as actual parameter lists to write and writeln.
Field widths in formatted write and writeln procedures now precisely defined.

Report 13: Programs
Program parameters now optional and their nature specified.

Report 14: Compliance with ISO 7185
Definitions of complying program and complying processor given.
Requirements for compliance with the ISO Pascal Standard explained.
APPENDIX F

Programming Examples

Two examples are presented: a program is developed as an illustration of the method of stepwise refinement [see Reference 2] followed by a procedure serving as a model of portable software.

Example 1: Program IsItAPalindrome

A program is developed to find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares expressed in decimal are palindromes. For example: 1 squared is 121 which is a palindrome.

A palindrome is a string of symbols from an alphabet which reads the same in forward or reverse order. Well-known examples in English include (ignoring blanks and punctuation):

“radar”
“a man, a plan, a canal, Panama”
“Doc, note, I dissent! A fast never prevents a fatness; I diet on cod.”

Example 1 Step 1:

program IsItAPalindrome(Outp); begin
  FindAllIntegersFrom1To100WhereSquaresArePalindromes
end { IsItAPalindrome }

Example 1 Step 2:

program IsItAPalindrome(Outp); begin

{ Find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares are palindromes. }

const
  Maximum = 100;
type
  IntRange = 1..Maximum;
var
  N: IntRange;
begin
  for N := 1 to Maximum do
    if Palindrome(Sqr(N)) then
      Writeln(N, ' squared is a palindrome.')
end { IsItAPalindrome }.

Example 1  Step 3:

program IsItAPalindrome(Output);
{ Find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares are
  palindromes. }
const
  Maximum = 100;
type
  IntRange = 1..Maximum;
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
  N: IntRange;
function Palindrome(Square: Positive): Boolean;
var
  NPlaces: 1..S {S = Trunc(Log10(Sqr(Maximum))) + 1};
begin { Palindrome }
  CrackDigits;
  Palindrome := CheckSymmetry(1, NPlaces)
end { Palindrome };begin
  for N := 1 to Maximum do
    if Palindrome(Sqr(N)) then
      Writeln(N, ' squared is a palindrome.')
end { IsItAPalindrome }.

Example 1  Step 4:

program IsItAPalindrome(Output);

{ Find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares are
  palindromes. }
const
  Maximum = 100;
type
  IntRange = 1..Maximum;
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
  N: IntRange;

function Palindrome(Square: Positive): Boolean;
const
  Places = 5 { = Trunc(log10(Sqr(Maximum))) + 1 };
type
  NPlaces = 1..Places;
  SingleDigit = 0..9;
  DigitVec = array [NPlaces] of SingleDigit;
var
  Digits: DigitVec;
  Size: NPlaces;
procedure CrackDigits;
begin
  Size := 1;
  while Square > 9 do begin
    Digits[Size] := Square mod 10;
    Square := Square div 10;
    Size := Size + 1
  end;
  Digits[Size] := Square
end { CrackDigits };
function CheckSymmetry(Left, Right: NPlaces): Boolean;
begin
  if Left >= Right then CheckSymmetry := true
  else
    if Digits[Left] = Digits[Right] then
      CheckSymmetry := CheckSymmetry(Left+1, Right-1)
    else CheckSymmetry := false
  end { CheckSymmetry };
begin { Palindrome }
  CrackDigits;
  Palindrome := CheckSymmetry(1, Size)
end { Palindrome };

begin
  for N := 1 to Maximum do
    if Palindrome(Sqr(N)) then
      Writeln(N, ' squared is a palindrome."
  end { IsItAPalindrome }.
Example 2: Procedure ReadRadixRepresentation

A generalized procedure to read integers expressed in any radix from 2 to 16 is presented.

type Radix = 2..16;

procedure ReadRadixRepresentation
(var F: Text; {contains the representation} 
 var E: Boolean; {indicates presence of errors} 
 var X: Integer; {set to result if no errors occur} 
     R: Radix {radix of representation});

{ReadRadixRepresentation assumes that textfile F is positioned to read a sequence of extended digits as a radix-R representation of an integer. The extended digits, in ascending order, are:
 '0', '1', '2', '3', '4', '5', '6', '7',
 '8', '9', 'a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e', 'f'
Upper-case letters corresponding to the lower-case letters may be used. The parameter E indicates whether one of the following errors occurred:
(1) The textfile F was not positioned to a sequence of extended digits.
(2) The sequence of digits represents an integer greater than Maxint.
(3) The sequence of extended digits contains a digit that is not a radix-R digit.}

type
 DigitRange = 0..15;

var
 D: DigitRange;
 V: Boolean;
 S: 0..Maxint;
procedure ConvertExtendedDigit(C: Char;
    var V: Boolean; var D: DigitRange);
{ ConvertExtendedDigit determines whether C is an extended digit, setting V to indicate its validity, and if V is true sets D to the numerical value of the extended digit. }
begin { ConvertExtendedDigit }
    V := C in ['0'..'9',' ','b','c','d','e','f',' ','b','c','d','e','f'];
    if V then
      case C of
        '0': D := 0; '1': D := 1; '2': D := 2;
        '3': D := 3; '4': D := 4; '5': D := 5;
        '6': D := 6; '7': D := 7;
        '8': D := 8; '9': D := 9;
        'A','a': D := 10; 'B','b': D := 11;
        'C','c': D := 12; 'D','d': D := 13;
        'E','e': D := 14; 'F','f': D := 15;
      end
    end { ConvertExtendedDigit }

begin { ReadRadixRepresentation }
    E := true;
    ConvertExtendedDigit(Fl,V,D);
    if V then
      begin
        E := false; S := 0;
        repeat
          if D < R then
            if (Maxint - D) div R >= S then begin
              S := S * R + D;
              Get(F);
              ConvertExtendedDigit(Fl,v,d);
            end
          else E := true
        until E or not V;
        if not E then X := S
      end
    end { ReadRadixRepresentation }.
The ASCII Character Set

ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) is the American variant of an officially-recognized, standard, international character set called the ISO (International Organization for Standardization) set. It specifies an encoding for 128 characters. Within the ISO character code there may exist national variants for 12 symbols (such as the currency symbol $). The 128 characters consist of 95 which print as single graphics and 33 which are used for device control. The backspace control character is specifically used to allow overprinting of characters such as accents on letters in some languages.

the 33 device–control characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACK</td>
<td>Acknowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEL</td>
<td>Bell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS</td>
<td>Backspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAN</td>
<td>Cancel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CR</td>
<td>Carriage Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC1</td>
<td>Device Control 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC2</td>
<td>Device Control 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC3</td>
<td>Device Control 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC4</td>
<td>Device Control 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLE</td>
<td>Data Link Escape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EM</td>
<td>End of Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENQ</td>
<td>Enquiry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EOT</td>
<td>End of Transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESC</td>
<td>Escape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETB</td>
<td>End of Transmission Block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETX</td>
<td>End of Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF</td>
<td>Form Feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>File Separator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GS</td>
<td>Group Separator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HT</td>
<td>Horizontal Tab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LF</td>
<td>Line Feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAK</td>
<td>Negative Acknowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUL</td>
<td>Null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RS</td>
<td>Record Separator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI</td>
<td>Shift In</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO</td>
<td>Shift Out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOH</td>
<td>Start of Heading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STX</td>
<td>Start of Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>Substitute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYN</td>
<td>Synchronous Idle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>Unit Separator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VT</td>
<td>Vertical Tab</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the full 128–character set:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>00</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>32</th>
<th>48</th>
<th>64</th>
<th>80</th>
<th>96</th>
<th>112</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>NUL</td>
<td>DLE</td>
<td>@</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SOH</td>
<td>DC1</td>
<td>!</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>q</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>STX</td>
<td>DC2</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ETX</td>
<td>DC3</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>EOT</td>
<td>DC4</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ENQ</td>
<td>NAK</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>u</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ACK</td>
<td>SYN</td>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>v</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>BEL</td>
<td>ETB</td>
<td>´</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>w</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>BS</td>
<td>CAN</td>
<td>(</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>HT</td>
<td>EM</td>
<td>)</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>LF</td>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>VT</td>
<td>ESC</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>{</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>{</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>FF</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>,</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>\</td>
<td>l</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>CR</td>
<td>GS</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>}</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>SO</td>
<td>RS</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>^</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>~</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SI</td>
<td>US</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>DEL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The 7–bit code for a character is the sum of the column and row numbers. For example, the code for the letter G is $7 + 64 = 71$. 
Index to Programs,  
Program Fragments,  
and Program Schemata

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 132 (12.2) | AddIn —  
Add line numbers to a textfile. |
| 44 (4.9) | ArabicToRoman —  
Write a table of powers of 2 in Arabic and Roman numerals; illustrate if statement. |
| 34 (4.1) | BeginEndExample —  
Illustrate compound statement; write sum of 2 numbers. |
| 182 | Bisect — (procedure);  
Find zeros of a polynomial. |
| 68 (7.1) | ComplexArithmetic —  
Illustrate operations on complex numbers. |
| 98 | Construct a list — (schema);  
Illustrate use of pointers. |
| 79 (8.1) | Convert —  
Read digit sequence from Input and convert to integer. |
| 93 | Copying a textfile — (schema). |
| 200 | CopyReals —  
Copy a file of real numbers. |
| 200 | CopyText —  
Copy a textfile. |
| 39 (4.6) | Cosine —  
Compute cosine(X) using power–series expansion;  
Illustrate for statement. |
DayTime —
Illustrate enumerated types and case statement.

Exponentiation —
Compute power(X,Y) real X raised to natural Y.

Exponentiation2 —
Refine Exponentiation by introducing a function.

ForExample —
Compute Nth partial sum of harmonic series.

ForwardDeclarations — (fragment).

GCD — (procedure);
Find greatest common divisor.

GCD — (function);
Find greatest common divisor using recursion.

GotoExample — (fragment);
Illustrate goto statement.

Graph1 —
Generate plot of f(X); Illustrate for statement.

Graph2 —
Modify Graph1 to plot axis by using an array.

Inflation —
Find factors that units of currency will be devalued.

IsItAPalindrome —
Find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares are palindromes.

LetterFrequencies —
Perform a frequency count of letters in the Input file; Illustrate textfiles.

MatrixMul —
Multiply 2 matrices represented as arrays.

MatrixMul2 —
Refine MatrixMul using a procedure with conformant-array parameters.

Max — (function);
Find maximum value in a vector of real numbers.
Max — (function);
Refine Max using conformant-array parameters.

MergeFiles —
Merge files of records.

MinMax —
Find the largest and smallest number in a list.

MinMax2 —
Refine MinMax by introducing a procedure declaration.

MinMax3 —
Refine MinMax2 to process 2 lists of numbers.

Normalize —
Normalize a file of real numbers.

Parameters —
Illustrate value and var parameters.

Person — (fragment);
Illustrate variant record type.

Postfix —
Convert an infix expression to Polish postfix form;
Illustrate nested, mutually recursive procedures.

Power — (function);
Compute power(X,Y), real X raised to natural Y.

Power — (function);
Compute real X raised to natural Y.

Prime1 —
Find primes by using sets to represent Erastosthenes Sieve.

Prime2 —
Refine Prime1 by using sets to represent odd numbers only.

Prime3 —
Refine Prime2 by using an array of sets.

PromptExample — (fragment);
Enter input from interactive terminal.

Read and process a sequence of numbers — (schema).
Read and process single numbers — (schema);
Use SkipBlanks.

Read and process n-tuples of numbers — (schema);
Use SkipBlanks.

Reading a textfile — (schema).

Reading characters from file Input — (schema).

ReadInteger — (procedure);
Read a sequence of digits and convert to integer value.

ReadRadixRepresentation — (procedure);
Generalized ReadInteger for any radix from 2 to 16.

RepeatExample —
Compute Nth partial sum of harmonic series.

Search a list — (schema
Illustrate use of pointer

SetOperations —
Illustrate set operations

SkipBlanks — (procedure);
Skip blanks between numbers on textfile.

SideEffect —
Illustrate function side effects.

Sqrt — (function);
Compute square root by Newton’s method.

SummingTerms —
Compute sum of terms of a series 4 ways.

SumSeries —
Write a table of a series sum progression;
Illustrate functional parameters.

TemperatureConversion
Write table of Celsius and Fahrenheit temperatures.

Traversal —
Illustrate binary–tree traversal using recursive procedures.

Traversal2 —
Refine Traversal by introducing procedural parameters.
WaitingList —
Simulate clients waiting;
Illustrate pointers.

WhileExample —
Compute Nth partial sum of harmonic series.

WithExample — (fragment);
Illustrate with statement.

WithExample2 — (fragment);
Illustrate with statement.

WithExample3 — (fragment);
Illustrate with statement.

Writing a textfile — (schema).

Writing characters on file Output — (schema).
Index

Abs, 18, 20, 192, 204, 211
Absolute value, see Abs
Abstraction, 14
Action, concept of, 1, 28, 143
Activation
  and formal parameters, 185
  point, 172, 181, 187
Activations, 172, 177, 179–180
Active variant, of record, 70, 100, 158, 191
Actual
  functional parameter, 122, 124, 188
  parameter, 107–109, 111–113, 147, 175, 180, 185, 186–187
  EBNF for, 187, 219, 225
  lists, 106, 107, 170, 186–188
  EBNF for, 187, 219, 225
  syntax diagram for, 107, 234
  procedural parameter, 117, 121, 188
  value conformant–array parameter, 113, 187
  value parameter, 110, 187
  variable parameter, 110, 154, 175, 187
Adding operators,
  EBNF for, 165, 218, 225
  operands of, 165
  and precedence, 32, 166
  (see also Arithmetic operators)
Addresses, for pointer types, 94
Algol 60, vii, 6, 7, 8, 142–143
Algol–W, vii
Algorithm, 1, 179
Alternative representations,
  of symbols, 10, 148, 212
And, 16, 168, 208, 212
  (see also Boolean operators)
Apostrophe, how to represent, 18, 150
Arabic to Roman, program for,
  44–46
ArcTan, 20, 193, 204, 211
Arctangent, see ArcTan
Argument, see Parameter
Arithmetic
  functions, predeclared, 192–193
  operations, on Boolean values, 8
  operators, 17, 146, 167, 208
Array
  components of, 144, 156
Array (continued)
conformant, see Conformant array
data types, 55, 210
declaration, 57
index type, 56, 112, 156
indexing, 20, 209
multidimensional, 60
not dynamic, 7
parameters, conformant, 63,
112–113, 185–187
sample programs of, 58–60
types, 56–65, 156
EBNF for, 156, 218, 225
syntax diagram for, 61
variable, EBNF for, 162, 219,
225
ASCII character set, 247–248
Assignable types, 160
Assignment
compatibility, 33, 53, 160
examples of, 33, 170
multiple, 7
operator, 209
statement, 28–33, 145, 170
EBNF for, 169
syntax diagram for, 29
to array variable, 57
to file, 87
to set, 76, 77

Base type, of set, 76, 77, 144, 158,
160, 165–166
EBNF for, 158, 218, 225
Begin, and compound statement,
34, 172
Binary tree, 117, 118
Blanks, as symbol separators, 9
(see also Space)
Block
EBNF for, 1, 177, 215, 225
of procedure, 105
structure, 5, 6, 8
syntax diagram for, 4, 21, 239
Blocks, 145, 146, 177–180
anonymous, 8
order of parts in, 1

Boolean
expression
EBNF for, 165, 219, 225
evaluation of, 32
functions, predeclared, 193
negation, and precedence, 32
operators, 146, 168, 208
type, 15, 16–17, 51, 143,
154, 210
write, 135, 137, 196–198
Bound identifier, 112, 179, 186, 189
EBNF for, 186, 219, 225
syntax diagram for, 231
Braces, 212
(see also Comment)
Brackets, 212 (see also Array
and Set constructor)
Buffer
accessing, 209
variable, 28, 87, 88, 89, 132, 164
EBNF for, 163, 219, 225
syntax diagram for, 87

Call by name, 7
Carriage-control character, 128
Case
EBNF for, 173, 217, 225
index, EBNF for, 173, 217, 225
statement, 7, 20, 46–47, 146, 173
EBNF for, 173, 217, 225
syntax diagram for, 46
in variant record, 70
Char type, 18–19, 143, 154, 210
Character
read, 134, 195
strings, 12–13, 149–150
EBNF for, 151, 220, 225
syntax diagram for, 13, 231
(see also Strings)
type, see Char type
write, 136–137, 197
Chr, 19, 194, 204, 211
Cobol, 7
Comment
EBNF for, 150
as separator, 9, 150
Compiler, 8 (see also Implementation)
Complex arithmetic, sample program for, 68–69
Component
of array, 56, 144, 156, 162
of file, 86, 87, 144, 158, 163
of record, 65, 67, 69–70, 144, 156, 162–163
(see also Fields)
of set, 145
of structured types, 144–145, 155, 161
type, 55, 56, 87, 156, 157–158
EBNF for, 156, 218, 225
variables, 28, 162, 162–164
EBNF for, 161, 219, 225
syntax diagram for, 57
Compound statement, 34, 146, 171–172
EBNF for, 172, 217, 225
syntax diagram for, 34
Computer program, 1, 143
Concatenation of strings, 8
Conditional
expressions, 7
statement, 43–47, 145, 172–173
EBNF for, 172, 217, 225
Conditions, mutually exclusive, 44
Conformant
array
and implementation levels, 185, 201
parameters, 185, 186, 187
and ISO standard, 201
schemas, 185–186, 188–189
EBNF for, 185, 216, 225
syntax diagram for, 112, 235
type, derivation of, 189
Conjunction, 208
Constant
definition, 23, 25–26
EBNF for, 152, 215, 225
part
EBNF for, 152, 215, 225
syntax diagram for, 23
EBNF for, 152, 218, 225
identifier
EBNF for, 152, 219, 226
predefined, 16, 17, 153, 211
syntax diagram for, 23
synonyms, scope of, 5
syntax diagram for, 23, 232
Constants, 151–152
predefined, 211
Constructor, set
(see Set constructor)
Control variable, of for statement,
7, 37, 38, 39, 175
EBNF for, 175, 217, 226
Conversion from Char to Integer,
sample program for, 79, 245–246
Copying, textfile, 93
Cos, 20, 193, 211
Cosine
program for, 39–40
(see also Cos)
Data
base, using pointer types, 97
of computer program, 1, 143
transfer procedures, predeclared,
192, 194
(type, 7, 14, 194, 210
(see also Type)
Date, implemented as record, 67
Declarations, 1, 7, 143
(see also specific kind of declaration, e.g., Function declaration)
Definitions, 1, 143
(see also specific kind of definition, e.g., Type definition)
Delayed evaluation of buffer
variable, 132–133
Designator
field, 162–163
function, 29, 122
Difference, see Set difference
Digit
   EBNF for, 149, 220, 226
   ordering in type char, 18, 153
Sequence
   EBNF for, 150, 220, 226
   syntax diagram for, 11, 230
Directives, 13, 149, 181, 183, 212
   EBNF for, 148
   syntax diagram for, 13, 230
   (see also Forward declaration)
Disjunction, 208
Dispose, 94, 101, 160, 191–192, 204, 211
Div, 17, 31, 32, 165–167, 208
   definition of, 167
   precedence of, 32, 167
   (see also Arithmetic operators)
Division by zero, 168
Do, see Repetitive statements, With
   statement
Domain type, of pointer, 145, 159
   EBNF for, 159, 217, 226
Downto, see For statement
Dynamic
   allocation procedures, predeclared, 191
   arrays, 7, 8
   set of values of pointer type, 15
   variables, 94, 145

EBNF
   alphabetical, for Pascal, 225–229
   cross reference of, 221–224
   hierarchical, for Pascal, 215–220
   of Polish notation, 113
   (see also Extended Backus–Naur
   Form; also particular language
   construct, EBNF for, e.g.
   Array type, EBNF for)
ElementDescription, EBNF for, 165, 219, 226
Else, see If statement
Empty
   parts of block, 1
   file, 86, 158
   set, 76–77, 166
   statement, 34, 44, 169
   EBNF for, 169, 218, 226
End, and compound statements,
   34, 172
   End–of–file, 87, 159 (see also Eof)
   End–of–line, 9, 92, 93, 134, 150,
   159, (see also Eoln)
EntireVariable, 28
   EBNF for, 162, 219, 226
Enumerated types, 15, 50–53, 143,
   144, 154, 153, 210
   EBNF for, 154, 217, 226
   syntax diagram for, 50
Eof
   and buffer variable, 87, 88, 132,
   190
   and file handling, 190
   as predefined Boolean function,
   17, 193, 204, 211
   and write, 135
Eoln
   and buffer variable, 92, 132, 164
   and file handling, 92–93
   as predefined Boolean function,
   17, 193, 204, 211
Equality, see Set equality,
   Relational operators
Equivalence 17
   (see also Set operations)
Eratosthenes’ sieve, 81
Error, and standards, 148, 201
Evaluation
   of buffer variables, 132, 133
   order of, 30–32, 166
Exclusive or, 17
   (see also Boolean operators)
Exp, 20, 193, 205, 211
Exponential function, see Exp
Exponentiation
   operator, 8
   program for, 36, 123
Expressions, 28–32, 165–169
   EBNF for, 165, 218, 226
   evaluation of, 30–32
   in assignment statement, 145
   syntax diagram for, 32, 234
Index

Extended Backus–Naur Form, 3, 147, 213–214 (see also specific example, e.g., ProgramHeading, EBNF for, and EBNF)
Extension, 148, 201
External files, 89, 199

Factor
EBNF for, 165, 219, 226
evaluation of, 167
syntax diagram, 30, 233
type of, 166
False, as predefined constant identifier, 16, 152, 154, 211
Field
designators, 163
EBNF for, 163, 219, 226
identifier, scope of, 65, 178–179
EBNF for, 157, 219, 226
syntax diagram for, 231
list, 156, 157–158
EBNF for, 157, 218, 226
syntax diagram for, 66, 237
of variant record, 72
width, of write, 136–137, 196–199
File
data types, in type taxonomy, 55, 210
declarations, 89, 90
handling procedures, predeclared, 190 (see also Get, Put, Read, Reset, Rewrite, Write)
length, 86, 158
parameter, 1, 110, 128
structure, 145
types, 86–93, 158–159
EBNF for, 158, 218, 226
not assignable, 33, 160
syntax diagram for, 87 (see also Text)
variable, 87, 164,
EBNF for, 164, 219, 226
(see also Textfile)
FinalValue, EBNF for, 175, 217, 226

Fixed
part, of field list, 157, 158

EBNF for, 157, 218, 226
syntax diagram for, 66
point notation and write, 137, 197–198
records, 65–69
Floating point notation, of write, 137–138, 197
For statements, 7, 37–39, 146, 174, 175–176
EBNF for, 175, 217, 226
examples of, 38, 39, 41, 42, 176
and real type, 20
syntax diagram for, 38
Formal parameter, 107, 111, 147, 170
list, 181, 183, 185–186
EBNF for, 185, 216, 226
syntax diagram for, 107, 235
section, EBNF for, 185, 216, 226
Formatted writes, 135–139, 196–199
Fortran, 6, 7
Forward
declaration, 126
of function, 8, 123, 183
of procedure, 8, 122, 181
sample program using, 125
directive, 212
(see Forward declaration)
Fraction length, of write, 136–137
Function, 122–125, 181–194
activation of, 167, 180
concept of, 102
declarations, 27, 122, 183–184
EBNF for, 183, 215, 226
examples of, 183–184
and scope, 5, 178–179
designator, 30, 122, 166
EBNF for, 165, 218, 226
forward declaration, 8, 123, 125, 183
heading,
EBNF for, 183, 216, 226
syntax diagram for, 122
identifier,
EBNF for, 183, 219, 226
syntax diagram for, 231
Function \textit{(continued)}

identification, EBNF for, 183, 216, 226
predeclared, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 122, 192–194, 211
recursive, 8, 122, 183
sample program using, 123, 124–125, 126

Functional parameters, 107, 110, 122, 124, 146, 186, 188
sample program using, 124–125
specification, EBNF for, 186, 216, 226

Generation mode, for file, 159
Get, 88, 128, 190, 205, 211
Global scope, 5, 27, 105
Goto statement, 47–49, 171–172
and activations, 172, 179
cautions about, 49
EBNF for, 171, 217, 226
and expressions, 164
and statement sequences, 171
syntax diagram for, 47

Graph, program for, 40–41, 59–60

Harmonic series, Nth partial sum, program for, 36, 37, 38

Heading, see Program headings, Procedures, Functions

Hoare, C.A.R., 81, 82, 202, 203

Host type, of subrange type, 53, 154

Identified variable, 28, 94, 159, 164, 194
EBNF for, 163, 219, 226
syntax diagram for, 95

Identifier

definition of, 10, 148
EBNF for, 149, 220, 227
examples of, 11, 149
list, EBNF for, 3, 154, 219, 227
scope of, 5, 6, 27, 149, 178–179
standard, 12, 211
syntax diagram for, 11, 230

Identifying values, of pointer type, 95, 159, 164, 194
If statement, 43–46, 146, 172
EBNF for, 172, 217, 227
syntax diagram for, 43
Implementation
of Boolean expressions, 32
defined, 148
definition, of Char type, 18
dependent, 148
features, and ISO standard, 201
operand evaluation, 166
order of accessing variable or result, 170
reset or rewrite of input or output, 200
of end--of--line markers, 93
of files, 87
of pointers, 94
of sets, 83
of subrange variables, 54
Implication, operation, 17
In, operator, 32, 78, 169, 208
Inclusion, see Set inclusion

Index

EBNF for, 162, 219, 227
type
of array, 56, 112, 144, 156, 189
EBNF for, 156, 218, 227
specification
EBNF for, 186, 216, 227
syntax diagram for, 112, 235
Indexed variables, 162
EBNF for, 162, 219, 227

Inequality, see Set inequality,
Relational operators

Infix notation, sample program to convert, 116–117
Inflation, sample program for, 2
InitialValue, EBNF for, 175, 217, 227
Inorder, 117, 119, 120
Input
device, 127–128, 194
file, 25, 92, 128, 193, 194, 211
in program parameter list, 199
Inspection mode, for file, 159
Integer
read, 133–134, 195
type, 17, 143, 153, 210
write, 135–137, 197
IntegerExpression, EBNF for, 165, 219, 227
Intersection, see Set intersection
Introduction, scope of, 178–179
I/O handling, 127
ISO Standard, 112, 185, 200–201, 203
Jump, see Goto statement

Label, 13, 146
and cases, 47
declaration part, 22, 178
part
  EBNF for, 178, 215, 227
  syntax diagram for, 22
EBNF for, 178, 220, 227
and goto, 47–48, 170
as program–points in activations, 179
scope of, 5, 27
in statements, 169
Letter
  EBNF for, 149, 220, 222
  syntax diagram for, 11, 230
LetterFrequencies, sample program using, 129–131
List
  linked, 98, 100, 101
  sample program using, 96–97
Ln, 20, 193, 205, 211
Local
  files, 194
  scope, 5, 27, 178
  variable, 105, 122, 146, 179
  as for statement
    control variable, 175
    initial value of, 160
Logarithm, see Ln
Logical, see Boolean
Loop, see Repetitive statements
Lower–case letters, 10, 19, 148, 153
Matrix
  as multidimensional array, 61
  multiplication, sample program for, 62–63, 114–115
  sample program using, 62
MaxInt, 17, 149, 151, 153, 168, 211, 246
Membership, see Set membership
Memory space, saving by using subrange type, 54
Merge files, sample program to, 91
Meta–identifier, 147, 151, 161, 213, 214
MinMax, sample program for, 58, 103–104, 108–109
Mod, 17, 31, 165, 167, 208
Modularity, of program, 23
Multiple assignments, 7
Multiplying operators
  EBNF for, 165, 218, 227
  and precedence, 31, 32, 166
  (see also Arithmetic operators)
Natural logarithms, see Ln
Negation, 208
Nested
  record, 69
  variant parts, of record, 72
  with statements, 74–75
New, 94, 95, 99, 158, 160, 191, 206, 211
Nil, 31, 95, 145, 159, 166
Not, 16, 165, 166, 168
  (see also Boolean operators)
Numbers, representation of, 12, 149

Add, 17, 26, 193, 205, 211
Operands, 166–167
Operations, on sets, 78, 168
Operators, 14–20, 63, 167–169
precedence of, 30–32, 167, 209
Or, 16, 165, 168
  (see also Boolean operators)
Ord, 16, 19, 51, 153, 194, 205, 211
Index 261

Ordinal
  data types, in type taxonomy, 15, 210
  expression, 165
  and case statement, 146
  EBNF for, 165, 219, 227
  functions, predeclared, 193–194
    (see also Ord, Chr, Pred, Succ)
  numbers, 15, 152
  types, 15, 50, 143, 153
    EBNF for, 153, 217, 227
    identifier, EBNF for, 152, 219, 227
    syntax diagram for, 16, 236
Output devices, 127, 194
Output file, 25, 92, 128, 196, 199, 200, 211
Own attribute, 8

Pack, 64, 192, 205, 211,
Packed, 155, 166
  array, 63, 113, 155
  conformant array schema,
    EBNF for, 185, 216, 227
  file, 92
  set constructor, 33, 77, 166
  and structured data type, 56
Page procedure, 128, 140, 199, 205–206, 211
Palindrome, sample program for,
  242–245
Parameter
  conformant array, 112–113, 117, 185–187
    sample program using, 114–115
  external files as, 89
  kinds of, 107, 110, 146, 185
  list, 1, 106–107, 179, 185–188
    congruity, 188
  passed by reference and by value, 8, (see also Variable
    parameters, Value parameters)
to Read procedure, 133–134
to Write procedure, 135–138
  (see also Identifiers)
Parentheses, 3

Pascal
  aims of language, 142
  Blaise, vi
  News, v, 203
  Revised Report, vii
  User’s Group, v
  Pattern recognition, 127
  Peripherals, 87
    (see also Input devices,
      Output devices)
PL/l, v, 6, 7, 8
Pointer
  data types, in type taxonomy, 14, 210
  type, 7, 94–99, 158
    EBNF for, 159, 217, 227
  and function result, 122, 146, 183
    identifier, EBNF for, 159, 219, 227
    sample program using, 96–97
    syntax diagram for, 95
    and variable, 29
    variables, 94, 145, 163
    EBNF for, 163, 219, 227
Polish notation, 113, 116–117
Portability, of programs, 23, 147
Position, in parameter lists, 187
Postfix, sample program for 116–117
Postorder, 117, 119, 120
Power, function for, 184
Powerset, 144, 158
Precedence, see Operator precedence
Pred, 16, 18, 19, 51, 153, 206, 211
Predecessor, of ordinal value, 15
  (see also Pred)
Predeclared
  functions, 181, 192–194, 204–207
  identifiers, 11, 211
  procedures, 181, 190–193, 204–207
Predefined
  constant identifiers, 16, 17, 151, 211
  type identifiers, 15, 89, 153, 158, 211
Preorder, 117, 119, 120
Prime numbers, sample program for, 82–85
Procedural parameters, 107, 110, 117, 147, 185–188
sample program using, 120–121
ProceduralParameterSpecification, EBNF for, 186, 216, 227
Procedures, 180, 181–182, 190–192
activation of, 33, 111, 170, 179–180
as actual parameters, 187–188
block, 147
concept of, 102
declaration, 27, 102, 103, 178, 179, 181
EBNF for, 182, 215, 227
examples of, 182
forward declaration of, 122, 125, 181
heading, 105, 107, 181
EBNF for, 182, 216, 227
syntax diagram for, 103
identification, EBNF for, 182, 216, 227
identifier, 105, 181
EBNF for, 182, 219, 227
predeclared, 190–193, 204–207
syntax diagram for, 231
recursive 8, 113, 182
statements, 33, 106, 146, 170–171
EBNF for, 171, 217, 227
syntax diagram for, 206
ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart
EBNF for, 181, 215, 227
syntax diagram for, 102
ProcedureOrFunctionHeading,
syntax diagram for, 102, 236
Processor, and ISO standard, 200
Productions, in EBNF, 3, 213
Program–point, 179
Program, 199–200
as EBNF start symbol, 214
block, 1, 146
development, 80–81, 106
EBNF for, 3, 199, 215, 227
heading, 1, 3, 21, 199–200
EBNF for, 3, 199, 215, 227
syntax diagram, 4, 22
parameter list, EBNF for, 199, 215, 227
parameters, 199
syntax diagram for, 4, 21, 239
Programming
examples, 242–248
(see also Language feature, sample program using, e.g.,
Procedures, sample program using)
style, 8
Prompt interactive user,
sample program to, 133
Put, 88, 128, 190, 206, 211
Radix read, sample program for, 245–246
Random–access
of array, 57, 144
of record, 65, 144
of set, 76, 144
Read, 206, 211
and buffer variable evaluation, 87, 88, 132
and default file, 128
and packed variable, 190
procedure, 133–135, 191, 194–195
from text file, 92, 93
sample program using 92, 134
Readability, of program, 106
Readln, 206, 211
and buffer variable evaluation, 132
and default file, 128
of packed variable, 190
procedure, 133–134, 195–196
from text file, 92–93
Read–only variable,
bound identifier similar to, 112
Real
number, 7
read, 134, 195
and subrange type, 53
type, 15, 19–20, 143, 153, 210
Real (continued)
  identifier, EBNF for, 153, 219, 228
  write, 135–138, 197–198

Record
  data types, in type taxonomy, 55, 210
  accessing component of, 72–73, 162–163
  sample program using, 68–69
  structure, 144
  types, 65–75, 156–158
  EBNF for, 157, 218, 228
  syntax diagram for, 66
  (see also Fixed records, Variant records)
  section
    EBNF for, 157, 218, 228
    syntax diagram for, 66
  variable
    EBNF for, 163, 219, 228
    list, EBNF for, 177, 217, 228

Recursion, sample program using, 116–117, 118–119

Recursive
  data structures, 95
  functions, 123, 183
  procedures, 7, 113, 182

Reference to a variable, 161, 163, 164, 170, 176, 180

Refinement steps, 102, 242–245

Relational operators, 31, 146, 169, 208
  EBNF for, 165, 218, 228
  on enumerated types, 51
  and ordinal types, 16
  and precedence, 32, 166
  and sets, 78
  and string types, 63

Repeat statement, 35, 37, 146, 174
  EBNF for, 174, 217, 228
  examples of, 37, 174
  syntax diagram, 35

Repetitive statements, 35–43, 173–176
  EBNF for, 174, 217, 228
  (see also Repeat, For, While)

Reserved words, 7
  (see also Word symbols)

Reset, 87, 129, 132, 190, 199, 206, 211

Result type,
  EBNF for, 183, 218, 228
  of function, 122, 146, 183
  of operators, 208
  of relational operators, 145
  Rewrite, 88, 129, 190, 199, 206, 211
  Round, 18, 193, 206, 211

Run–time validity check,
  of subrange types, 54

ScaleFactor, EBNF for, 150, 220, 228

Scope, 5–6, 177–179
  of field identifier, 65, 75, 156, 176, 178–179
  of function variables, 122
  of identifier, 5, 6, 105, 146, 149
  of constant identifiers,
    introduced by enumerated type
    in record type, 72
    and spelling, 149, 178
    in with statement, 73, 75, 177
  Search, of linked list, 99
  Secondary storage, 87
  Selection
    from linked list, 98
    (see also Component)
  Selector type, and case statement, 46

Semicolon
  and else, 44
  rules for, 34

Separators, of symbols, 9, 150

Sequential–access, of file, 86–87

Sequential file, as file type, 86, 145, 157–158

Set
  assignment, example of, 79
  base type, and real type, 20
  constructors, 77, 165–166, 209
  EBNF for, 164, 219, 229
  syntax diagram, 77
  data structure, 7, 144
Set (continued)

data types, in type taxonomy, 55, 210

declaration, example of, 78
difference, 78, 145, 168, 209
equality, 78
implementation of, 83
inclusion, 78, 208
inequality, 78
intersection, 78, 145, 168, 209
membership, 76, 78, 208
operators, 78–80, 146, 168–169
sample program using, 79–80, 82–85, 129–131

types

definition of, 76, 158
EBNF for, 158, 218, 228
syntax diagram for, 76
union, 78, 146, 169, 209

Side effects, 125–126, 146

Sign

EBNF for, 150, 220, 228
(see also Arithmetic operators)

SignedInteger, EBNF for, 150
SignedNumber, EBNF for, 150
SignedReal, EBNF for, 150

Simple
data types, in type taxonomy, 14, 15, 210

expressions, 31, 165–167
EBNF for, 165, 217, 228
syntax diagrams for, 31, 233
statements, 170–172
EBNF for, 170, 216, 228
types, 14–20, 143, 153–154
EBNF for, 153, 217, 228
and function result, 122, 146
predefined, 15, 154–155
syntax diagram for, 15
(see also Ordinal types, Real)

Sin, 20, 193, 206, 211
Sine, see Sin

SkipBlanks, sample procedure for, 134–135
Space, as separator, 150
(see also Blank)

SpecialSymbol, EBNF for, 149

Spelling

of directive, 149
of identifier, 149
of label, 178
and scope, 178
of word symbol, 149
Sqr, 18, 20, 36, 192, 206, 211
Sqrt, 20, 193, 207, 211
Square root, example function for, 183 (see also Sqrt)
Square, see Sqr

Standard Pascal, 147, 200–201, 203
Start symbol, for EBNF for Pascal, 214

Statement, 1, 170–177
compound, 22, 172
EBNF for, 170, 216, 228
empty, 34, 44, 170
part
EBNF for, 170, 215, 228
syntax diagram for, 22
separators, 7, 34
sequence, EBNF for, 172, 216, 228
simple or structured, 28
syntax diagram for, 29, 238

Static variables, 94, 145
Stepwise refinement, for programming, 81, 242–245

String

costants, 12–13, 150–151
construction, 209
element, EBNF for, 151, 220, 228
parameters, 117
types, 63, 155, 156
and compatibility, 159
write, 135, 137, 198–199
(see also Character strings)

Structured
programming, 81
statements, 146, 172–177
EBNF for, 172, 217, 228
type identifier, EBNF for, 155, 219, 228
types, 14, 144, 155–159
EBNF for, 155, 217, 228
syntax diagram for, 56
taxonomy of, 55, 210
Subrange
data types, in type taxonomy, 15, 210
types, 53–54, 144, 155
and compatibility, 159
declaration of, 54
definition of, 15, 50, 143, 155
EBNF for, 154, 218, 228
syntax diagram for, 53
Succ, 16, 18, 19, 51, 154, 194, 207, 211
Successor, see Succ
SummingTerms, program for, 41
SumSeries, sample program for, 124–125
Symbols
kinds of, 148–149
lexical, 148
separators, 150
(see also Separators)
special
list of, 10, 212
EBNF for, 148
table of, 212
Syntax diagrams, 3
collected, 230–239
Tag
field
EBNF for, 157, 218, 228
not allowed as actual
variable parameter, 163, 187
of variant record, 71, 144, 156–157
type, of variant record, 70
EBNF for, 157, 218, 228
Teaching, Pascal as language for, 142
Temperature conversion,
program for, 25–26
Term, 31, 165–167
EBNF for, 165, 218, 228
syntax diagram for, 31, 233
Terms, evaluation of, 31
Text, type, 127, 159, 164
Textfile input and output,
127–140, 194–199
Textfiles, 25, 92–93, 128, 164
definition, 158
sample program using, 129–131
standard, 92
Then, see If statement
Threaten, and For statement, 175
To, see For statement
Transfer functions, predeclared, 193
Traversals, of tree, 117, 118–119, 120–121
True, as predefined constant
identifier, 16, 152, 154, 211
Trunc, 18, 193, 207, 211
Truncation, see Trunc
Type
compatibility, 160
conversion, automatic, 8
definition, 24, 143, 152
EBNF for, 152, 215, 228
part
EBNF for, 152, 215, 228
example of, 159–160
syntax diagram for, 24
and scope, 5, 178
example of, 25–26, 159
EBNF for, 153, 217, 228
identifier, 24
EBNF for, 152, 219, 228
syntax diagram for, 231
syntax diagram 24, 236
taxonomy, 14, 210
values for variable, 143
Types, 14–20, 50–101, 152–161
kinds of, 15, 143–145
predefined, 211
(see also Structured types,
Pointer types, Simple types)
Unary operators, 166
Undefined variable, 160
Unpack, 64, 192, 207, 211
Unpacked
conformant array schema,
EBNF for, 186, 216, 229
set constructor, 33, 77, 166
structured type, EBNF for, 155, 217, 229
Unsigned constant
EBNF for, 165, 218, 229
syntax diagram for, 31, 231
integer
ERNF for, 150, 220, 229
syntax diagram for, 12, 230
number
EBNF for, 150, 219, 229
syntax diagram for, 12, 231
real, EBNF for, 150, 220, 229

Until, see Repeat statement

Up–arrow, see Alternative symbols

Upper–case, letters, 10, 19, 148, 153

Value parameters, 107, 110, 113, 146
actual, 110, 187–188
formal, 110, 185
sample program using, 111
specification, EBNF for, 185, 216, 228

Var
parameters, 107, 110, 185–186
(see also Variable parameters)
see Variable declaration

Variable
accessing operations, 209
declaration, 7, 25, 143, 145, 160
EBNF for, 161, 215, 229
part
EBNF for, 161, 215, 229
syntax diagram for, 25
and scope, 105, 178–179
example of, 162, 219, 229
EBNF for, 162, 219, 229
identifier
EBNF for, 161, 219, 229
syntax diagram for, 231
parameters, 107, 110, 185–187
specification, EBNF for, 185, 216, 229
sample program using, 111
read–only, 112
syntax diagram for, 30, 232
totally undefined, 161
undefined, 161
within activations, 179–180

Variables, 161–164
buffer, 87–89, 163–164
cOMPONENT, 57, 65, 161–163
defined, 161
global to procedure, 105
identified, 94–95, 163
kinds of, 28, 161–164
local to procedure, 105
to represent data, 143
standard, 128, 211

Variant
EBNF for, 157, 218, 229
part
EBNF for, 157, 218, 229
of record, 70, 72, 157, 163
syntax diagram, 70
records, 69–73, 144
and dynamic allocation, 99, 101, 191
eamples of, 71–72, 158
selector, EBNF for, 157, 218, 229
syntax diagram, 70

While statements, 35, 146, 173–174
EBNF for, 173, 217, 229
eample of 36, 174
syntax diagram for, 35

Whole number, 7

With statements, 47, 73–75, 176–177
EBNF for, 176, 217, 229
syntax diagram for, 73

Word symbols, 9, 148, 212
EBNF for, 148
(see also Reserved words)
Write, 92, 135–139, 196, 207, 211
and buffer variable evaluation, 87, 88, 133, 191
and default file, 128, 194
eamples, 138–139
ormatted, 136–137, 190, 196–199
parameter
EBNF for, 196, 219, 229
list
EBNF for, 196, 219, 229
syntax diagram for, 136, 234

Write, 92, 135–139, 198
and default file, 128
and equivalent writes, 136, 198